

2nd FLEET

Rules of Play

©1986, Victory Games, Inc., New York, New York 10001

3001871

Table of Contents

1.0 Introduction	3
2.0 Game Equipment	3
2.1 Game Components	3
2.2 Game Questions	3
2.3 Playing Pieces	3
2.4 Abbreviations	5
3.0 Sequence of Play	7

BASIC GAME RULES

4.0 The Action Phase	8
4.1 The Action Segments	8
4.2 Unit Activation	8
4.3 Limitations on Activation	8
4.4 What Activated Units Can Do	8
4.5 The Action Segment Track	9
4.6 Fiords	9
5.0 Movement	9
5.1 How Units Move	9
5.2 Surface Unit Movement	9
5.3 Submarine Unit Movement	10
5.4 Air Unit Movement	10
5.5 Base Hexes	10
6.0 Stacking	10
6.1 Stacking Restrictions	11
6.2 Groups	11
7.0 Strategic Air Missions	12
7.1 Mission Eligibility	12
7.2 Interception Missions	12
7.3 Reconnaissance Missions	13
7.4 Tactical Coordination Missions	13
7.5 Returning to Base	13
8.0 Combat Air Patrol (CAP)	14
8.1 How to Perform CAP	14
8.2 CAP and Air-to-Air Combat	14
8.3 CAP and SSM Combat	15
8.4 Returning to Base	15
9.0 Detection	15
9.1 Detection Zones	15
9.2 Placement of Detection Markers	15
9.3 Detection Restrictions	16
9.4 Effects of Detection	16
9.5 Removing Detection Markers	16
10.0 Combat	18
10.1 Initiating Combat	18
10.2 Combat Values	18
10.3 Torpedo Combat	18
10.4 Surface-to-Surface Missile (SSM) Combat	19
10.5 Bombing Combat	21
10.6 Anti-Submarine Warfare (ASW) Combat	22
10.7 Air-to-Air Combat	22
10.8 Combat and Base Hexes	23

11.0 Damage	24
11.1 How Damage Occurs	24
11.2 Effects of Damage	24
11.3 Air Unit Damage in Bombing Combat	24
12.0 Special Units	24
12.1 Aircraft Carriers	24
12.2 Airborne Early Warning (AEW) Air Units	24
12.3 Electronic Warfare (EW) Air Units	24
13.0 Introductory Scenarios	25
13.1 Scenario 1: Standing Naval Force Atlantic	25
13.2 Scenario 2: Sink the Boomers!	25
13.3 Scenario 3: Into the Jaws of the Backfire	26
13.4 Scenario 4: Damn the Torpedoes!	27
13.5 Scenario 5: The Big Stick	28

INTERMEDIATE GAME RULES

14.0 Airfields and Ports	30
14.1 Attacking Airfields and Ports	30
14.2 Repair	30
15.0 Intermediate Scenarios	34
15.1 Scenario 6: Into the Norwegian Sea	31
15.2 Scenario 7: In Harm's Way	32
15.3 Scenario 8: The Battle of the Gap	33
15.4 Scenario 9: NATO Resurgent	35

ADVANCED GAME RULES

16.0 Time of Year	37
16.1 Darkness	37
16.2 Drift Ice	37
17.0 Weather	37
18.0 Invasion of NATO Bases	38
18.1 Invasion Hexes	38
18.2 Amphibious Assaults	38
18.3 Parachute Assaults	39
18.4 Commando Assaults	39
18.5 Control of NATO Bases	40
19.0 Sound Surveillance System (SOSUS) Hexes	41
19.1 Units Affected by SOSUS Hexes	41
19.2 Effects of SOSUS Hexes	41
20.0 Logistics (Optional)	42
20.1 The Logistics Rosters	42
20.2 Surface Units and Ammunition Expenditure	42

20.3 Submarines and Ammunition Expenditure	42
20.4 Air Units and Ammunition Expenditure	43
20.5 Movement and Logistics	43
20.6 Replenishment	43
20.7 Out of Fuel/Ammo Markers	44
21.0 Tactical Nuclear Warfare (Optional)	44
21.1 Availability of Nuclear Weapons	44
21.2 Use of Nuclear Weapons	44
21.3 First Use of Nuclear Weapons	45
22.0 Deep Mode (Optional)	45
22.1 How to Enter Deep Mode	45
22.2 Effects of Deep Mode	45
23.0 Mines (Optional)	46
23.1 Mine Placement	46
23.2 Effects of Mines	46
23.3 Minesweeping	46
24.0 Optional Rules	47
24.1 Cruise Missiles	47
24.2 The US B-1 Air Unit	47
24.3 Alternate Air Wings on US Aircraft Carriers	47
24.4 Future Combatants	47
24.5 Soviet "Tattletales"	47
24.6 High Speeds	47
24.7 Increased Movement for Air Units	47
24.8 Variable SSM Targeting	47
24.9 Close Combat	48
25.0 Political and Random Events	48
25.1 Armistice	48
25.2 Random Events	48
25.3 Special Events	49
26.0 Reinforcements	50
26.1 Availability of Reinforcements	50
26.2 Placement of Reinforcements	50
27.0 Soviet Strategy	50
27.1 Effects of Soviet Strategy	50
27.2 Escalation	50
28.0 Advanced Game Scenario	51
28.1 Game Length	51
28.2 Preparedness Levels	51
28.3 Deployment	51
28.4 NATO First Game Turn Restrictions	51
28.5 Victory Conditions	51
28.6 Levels of Victory	53
Situation Analysis	54
Military Forces	57

1.0 Introduction

2ND FLEET is a simulation of contemporary naval warfare in the North Atlantic and Arctic Oceans. In turns representing eight hours of real time, the players maneuver surface warships, submarines, squadrons of combat aircraft, amphibious assault vessels, and cargo ships on a detailed map of the region stretching from Greenland to the Soviet Union. A hexagonal grid has been superimposed over the map and each hex equals 46 nautical miles.

Sections 4.0 through 12.0 teach players basic movement and combat rules; the five scenarios in Section 13.0 allow the players to use these rules in simple, short games. Section 14.0 introduces some additional rules that are used in the four Intermediate Scenarios (Section 15.0) and the Advanced Game. Sections 16.0 through 28.0 describe the Advanced Game, which is the most realistic and complex scenario.

Note to Owners of Sixth Fleet: 2ND FLEET uses many of the game mechanics from SIXTH FLEET. However, there are many differences between the systems of the two games, and players should read the rules to 2ND FLEET thoroughly.

No link-up scenario between 2ND FLEET and SIXTH FLEET is included. Players who own both games may wish to create their own scenarios. Hexes 2601, 2602, 2603 of the west map of SIXTH FLEET (the Atlantic Zone) are 16 hexes from any southernmost hex of the British Isles Zone and 20 hexes from any southernmost hex of the North Atlantic Zone in 2ND FLEET. It is recommended that players use the SIXTH FLEET rules when playing any portion of a scenario on the SIXTH FLEET maps and the 2ND FLEET rules when playing on the 2ND FLEET maps.

2.0 Game Equipment

2.1 GAME COMPONENTS

A complete game of 2ND FLEET contains these items:

- One Rules Booklet
- Two 22-inch by 32-inch Mapsheets
- Two Sets of 192 3/8-inch Playing Pieces (Counters)
- One Set of 260 1/2-inch Game Markers
- Two Charts and Tables Booklets
- One Pad of Logistics Rosters
- Two Deployment/Reinforcement Cards
- One 10-sided die

Note: The game uses a 10-sided die. When a "0" is rolled, this is considered a "0" and not "10" as in many other games. Also, a "0" is always considered an *even* number.

2.2 GAME QUESTIONS

If you have any questions about the rules to 2ND FLEET, please feel free to send in your questions, written so they can be answered with a simple one-word response when possible. Be sure to enclose a stamped, self-addressed envelope. Mail your questions to.

2nd Fleet Questions
Victory Games, Inc.
43 West 33rd St.
New York, NY 10001

Note: We ask your cooperation in sending a self-addressed, stamped envelope with your game questions; queries without a return envelope will not be answered. Also, we ask that you not call in your game questions, since the designer does not work on our staff.

2.3 PLAYING PIECES

The playing pieces (counters) include military forces from seven nations. The US and allied NATO counters have green borders, and each has a different interior color; all non-Soviet forces belong to NATO and are always on the same side. The Soviet counters are red. In addition to the colors on the counters, each nation's forces can be distinguished by the two-letter abbreviation on the counter.

The backs of the counters are printed with a starburst design and reduced values, indicating that these units have been damaged. Note that certain units (cargo ships and some air units) are not backprinted. When these units are damaged, they are destroyed or sunk.

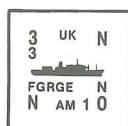
Each player also has a set of half-inch markers that are used to record game information. Some markers are printed in the NATO color, some in the Soviet color, and others in a neutral color.

SUMMARY OF COUNTER TYPES

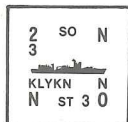
Surface Combat Units

Front		Back
	AIRCRAFT CARRIER (CV)	
	CRUISER (CG)	
	LIGHT CRUISER (CL)	
	DESTROYER (DD)	
	FRIGATE (FF)	
	BATTLESHIP (BB)	
	PATROL COMBATANT (PC)	
Front		Back
	AMPHIBIOUS ASSAULT (AA)	
	TANKER (TK)	

Front



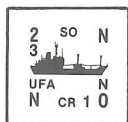
AMMUNITION CARRIER (AM)



SUBMARINE TENDER (ST)



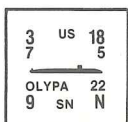
COMBAT SUPPORT (CS)



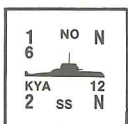
CARGO SHIP (CR)

Submarine Units

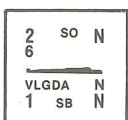
Front



NUCLEAR SUBMARINE (SN)

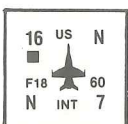


DIESEL SUBMARINE (SS)

BALLISTIC MISSILE
SUBMARINE (SB)

Air Units

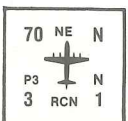
Front



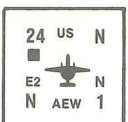
INTERCEPTOR (INT)



ATTACK (ATK)



RECONNAISSANCE (RCN)

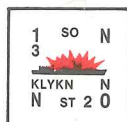
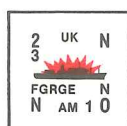


AIRBORNE EARLY WARNING (AEW)

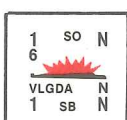
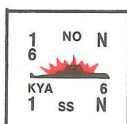
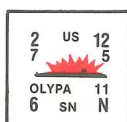


ELECTRONIC WARFARE (EW)

Back

Soviet
Unloaded

Back

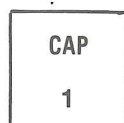


Back



SUMMARY OF GAME MARKERS

Front



CAP MISSION



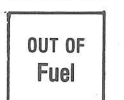
TASK GROUP/FORCE



MINE



OUT OF AMMO



OUT OF FUEL



LOCAL/STRATEGIC DETECTION



MARINE



PARACHUTE



COMMANDO



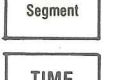
DEEP



DESTROYED



ACTION SEGMENT



TIME OF YEAR



ARMISTICE

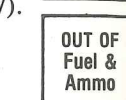
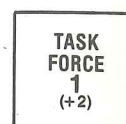


SOVIET STRATEGY

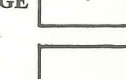


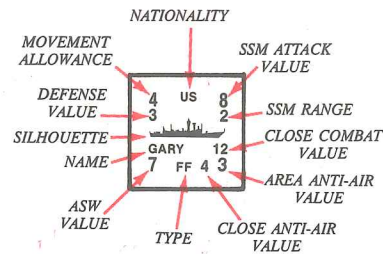
GAME TURN

Back

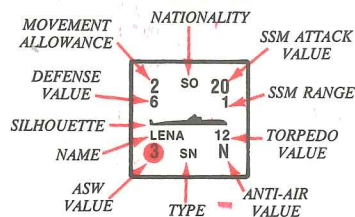


DAMAGE



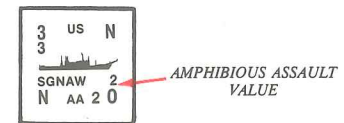
SAMPLE SURFACE UNIT (Front)

Note: An "N" in place of the SSM, ASW, Anti-Air, or Close Combat values indicates that the unit cannot perform that form of combat. If a unit has a Close Anti-Air or Area Anti-Air value, but not both, a "0" indicates which value it cannot use.

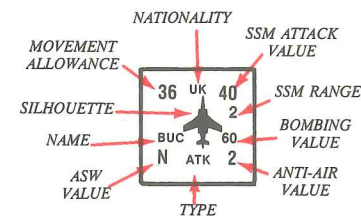
SAMPLE SUBMARINE UNIT (Front)

● = Noisy Submarine Indication

Note: A submarine unit always has an "N" for its Anti-Air value. Only Soviet submarine units have the "Noisy Sub Indicator."

SAMPLE AMPHIBIOUS ASSAULT UNIT (Front)

Note: Aside from the Amphibious Assault value, all other values on an AA unit are identical with other surface units.

SAMPLE AIR UNIT (Front)

★ = Special SSM Indication ■ = All-Weather Indication

Note: Some US and UK air units have the "Special SSM Indication," which is used in the Advanced Game (see 20.4). Some carrier-based US air units have the "All-weather Indication," which is used in the Advanced Game (see 16.0 and 17.0). Also, air units do not have Defense values. Their Movement Allowance is either a two or three-digit number.

2.4 ABBREVIATIONS

The following abbreviations are used in the game:

Surface Units

AA: Amphibious Assault
AM: Ammunition Carrier
BB: Battleship
CG: Missile Cruiser
CL: Light Cruiser
CR: Cargo Ship
CS: Combat Support
CV: Aircraft Carrier
DD: Destroyer
FF: Frigate
PC: Patrol Combatant
PCS: Patrol Combatant Squadron
ST: Submarine Tender
TK: Tanker

Submarine Units

SB: Nuclear Ballistic Missile Submarine
SN: Nuclear Submarine
SS: Diesel Submarine

Air Units

AEW: Airborne Early Warning
ATK: Attack
B: Beriev

BUC: Buccaneer
CAN: Canberra
EW: Electronic Warfare
HAR: Sea Harrier
HLX: Helix
I: Ilyushin
INT: Interceptor
M: Mikoyan (MiG)
NIM: Nimrod
PHN: Phantom
RCN: Reconnaissance
S: Sukhoi
SKG: Sea King
T: Tupolev
TOR: Tornado
Y: Yakovlev

Countries:

CA: Canada
IT: Italy
NE: Netherlands
NO: Norway
SO: Soviet Union
UK: United Kingdom
US: United States
WG: West Germany

Sea Zones

BI: British Isles
BS: Barents Sea
GS: Greenland Sea
IC: Iceland
LS: Labrador Sea
NA: North Atlantic
NS: Norwegian Sea
SV: Svalbard

Miscellaneous

AAA: Area Anti-Air
AP: Ammunition Point
ASW: Anti-Submarine Warfare
CAP: Combat Air Patrol
FP: Fuel Point
Hpn: Harpoon
Mav: Maverick
PR: Parachute Regiment
RCR: Royal Canadian Regiment
SEg: Sea Eagle
SSM: Surface-to-Surface Missile
SUSA: Susa Alpini Battalion
TORP: Torpedo
VP: Victory Points

Ship Names

Only ships whose names have been abbreviated are included on this list:

CANADA

IROQS: Iroquois
NPGON: Nipigon
OTTWA: Ottawa
SGNAY: Saguenay

NETHERLANDS

BNKRT: Banckert
BTRES: Bloys Van Treslong
DERUY: De Ruyter
EVTSN: Evertsen
KRTNR: Kortenaer
PHEIN: Piet Hein
VGALN: Van Galen
WDEWT: Witte de With

NORWAY

BERGN: Bergen
NRVIK: Narvik
SKLNA: Sklinna
STVGR: Stavanger

SOVIET UNION*Surface Combat Units*

AMTST: Ametist
BSHKY: Bashkiri
BSMNY: Bessmenny
DZHSK: Dzerzhinskiy
FRNZE: Frunze
GNVNY: Gnevnyy
GRMKY: Gromkiy
GRVAL: Gorval
GRZIN: Gruzin
KKRYM: Krasnyy Krym
KRMLN: Kremlin
KRSDT: Kronshtadt
MNSHK: Menshinsky
NKHMY: Nakhimov
NKLYV: Nikolayev
NKTMY: Neukrotimyy
OBRVS: Obraztsovyy
ORLVY: Orlovskiy
ORVDT: Oktyabrskaya Revolyutsiya
OSMTR: Osmotritilnyy
OTCHY: Otchayanny
SDRZY: Sderzhanny
SILNY: Silnyy
SMTLV: Smetlivyy
SPRNV: Admiral Spiridonov
STRNY: Stroynyy
SVRPY: Svirepyy
SVTPL: Sevastopol
TALLN: Tallin
TMSHK: Timoshenko
UDLOY: Udalo
UKRNY: Ukrainyy
VRYAG: Varyag
VSLYV: Vasil'yevskiy
ZGCHY: Zhguchiy
ZOZLY: Zozulya

Submarine Units

ABLGN: Anatoly Blagonravov
CCHER: Constantin Chernenko
CHSKY: Chelyabinskiy
DNSKY: Donskaya
FDZHR: Feliks Dzerzhinskiy
FKZLV: Frol Kozlov

IKNEV: Ivan Konev
KLMYA: Kalmytskaya
KLSKY: Kolskiy
KRLSK: Karelskaya
KSNGV: Krasnogvardets
KVS KY: Kvibishevskiy
LNSKY: Leninskiy
MGNIT: Magnitogorskiy
MKALN: Mikhail Kalinin
MTSKY: Mikhail Tukhachevskiy
PPSLV: Pyotr Pospelov
SGRCH: Stepan Georgievich
UKRNA: Ukraina
VCHKV: Vasily Chuykov
VFGNR: Vera Figner
VLDMR: Vladimirovskiy
VLGDA: Vologda
YGAGR: Yuri Gagarin
YRSKY: Yaroslavskiy

Non-Combat Surface Units

BELOY: Beloye More
CHSKY: Cheshkaya Guba
CHLKN: Boris Chilikin
GSNOV: Gasanov
KLYKN: Kolyshkin
KRSKY: Karskoye More
LDNEV: Lednev
PCHOR: Pechorskoye More
OBSKY: Obskaya Guba
RYBKV: Riyabakov
VDYEV: Vidyayev
VLYUY: Vilyuy

UNITED KINGDOM*Surface Combat Units*

ACTVE: Active
ANDRM: Andromeda
BDSWD: Broadsword
BRMHM: Birmingham
BRSTL: Bristol
BTAXE: Battleaxe
CMBIA: Cumbria
GLSGW: Glasgow
ILTRS: Illustrious
INVCL: Invincible
LNDON: London
LVRPL: Liverpool
MNCTR: Manchester
MNRVA: Minerva
NRFLK: Norfolk
PHEBE: Phoebe
SCYLA: Scylla
SHFLD: Sheffield

Submarine Units

CONQR: Conqueror
SPRTN: Spartan
SUPRB: Superb
TALNT: Talent
TFLGR: Trafalgar
UPHLD: Upholder
WRSPT: Warspite

Non-Combat Surface Units

BAYLF: Bayleaf
BLRVR: Blue Rover
FAUST: Fort Austin

FGRGE: Fort Grange
INTRP: Intrepid
NRLND: Norland
RGENT: Regent
SBDVR: Sir Bedivere
SLNCT: Sir Lancelot
STRIS: Sir Tristram

UNITED STATES*Surface Combat Units*

BELNP: Belknap
BGLEY: Bagley
BHILL: Bunker Hill
BURKE: Arleigh Burke
BYRD: Richard E. Byrd
CNOLY: Conolly
CRSEA: Coral Sea
DAVID: Albert David
DAVIS: Rodney M. Davis
GDBOR: Goldsborough
INPDN: Independence
JAMES: Reuben James
MSBGR: Moosbrugger
PAGE: Richard L. Page
RDGRS: John Rodgers
RSVLT: Theodore Roosevelt
SCLNA: South Carolina
SPNCE: Spruance
TATNL: Tattnall
TRIBE: Trippe
VNCNS: Vincennes
VRGNA: Virginia

Submarine Units

GROTN: Groton
LAJLA: La Jolla
LPCMB: Lipscomb
NPNWS: Newport News
OLYPA: Olympia
PHENX: Phoenix

Non-Combat Surface Units

ALTAR: Altair
AUSTN: Austin
BAUGH: William B. Baugh
BWOOD: Belleau Wood
CGNUS: Cygnus
CMDEN: Camden
CNSTO: Canisteo
FFSHR: Fort Fisher
GNTWN: Germantown
HAUGE: Louis J. Hauge, Jr.
HRCTY: Harlan County
IJIMA: Iwo Jima
KAISR: Henry Kaiser
KOKAK: Sgt. Matej Kocak
LUMUS: 1st Lt. Jack Lummus
MLWKE: Milwaukee
MTEOR: Meteor
NWPRT: Newport
PLLUX: Pollux
SGNAW: Saginaw
TCLBA: TransColumbia
TCLDO: TransColorado
WLMET: Willamette

WEST GERMANY

MOLDR: Molders

3.0 Sequence of Play

"All contemporary great powers are maritime states."

— Admiral Sergei G. Gorshkov

All actions that occur in a Game Turn take place in a strict Sequence of Play. The Game Turn is composed of a number of Phases, which in turn can be comprised of a number of Segments, that must be performed in the order listed below.

A day of real time is represented by three Game Turns: AM, PM, and Night, each of which represents eight hours of real time. Some Phases in the Sequence of Play take place only in an AM or Night turn and are ignored in other turns.

STRATEGIC CYCLE (AM Game Turns only)

A. Political Events Phase

(Advanced Game; not on Game Turn 1)

The NATO player rolls a die and the players consult the Armistice Table. The Armistice marker may be advanced or the players may be required to consult the Random or Special Events Tables. If the Armistice marker advances, the Soviet player receives Victory Points for controlling NATO bases and for "sea denial" (see 28.5).

B. Weather Phase *(Advanced Game)*

The NATO player rolls the die and the players consult the Weather Table (see 17.0). If a squall or storm results, the die is rolled again and the Zone Table is consulted to determine which zones are affected.

C. Reinforcement Phase

(Advanced Game; not on Game Turn 1)

Both players roll a die and consult the Reinforcement Table (see 26.0). Any reinforcements made available by these rolls are deployed on the map.

D. Submarine Mode Phase *(Advanced Game; optional)*

The players can place Deep markers on any of their submarine units whose Movement Allowance is two or more. Also, players can remove Deep markers from their submarine units (see 22.0).

E. Strategic Air Phase

1. *Allocation Segment:* Both players secretly assign air units to strategic missions on their Strategic Air Displays (see 7.1).
2. *Interception Segment:* Opposing air units that are on Interception missions within the same zone perform Air-to-Air Combat (see 7.2).
3. *Bounce Segment:* Surviving Interception air units perform Air-to-Air Combat against enemy air units in the same zone on non-Interception missions (see 7.2).
4. *Mine Segment (Optional):* Air units on Mining missions place Mine markers in coastal hexes (see 23.0).
5. *Strategic Detection Segment:* For each Reconnaissance air unit in a zone, the owning player can place a Strategic Detection marker on an enemy surface unit (or stack) or attempt to place a Strategic Detection marker on an enemy submarine within that zone (see 9.2).

F. Invasion Phase *(Advanced Game)*

1. *Soviet Segment:* The Soviet player can place Ground Force markers in eligible NATO bases (see 18.0).
2. *NATO Segment:* The NATO player can place Ground Force markers in any NATO bases (see 18.0).
3. *Control Segment:* If Soviet and NATO Ground Force markers occupy the same base, the players determine who controls that base (18.5).

ACTIVITY CYCLE (All Game Turns)

G. CAP Phase

Both players assign air units to CAP (see 8.0).

H. Minesweeping Phase *(Advanced Game; optional)*

A player rolls the die once for each hex containing mines to determine if any Mine markers are removed (see 23.3).

I. Replenishment Phase *(Advanced Game; optional)*

Both players can perform in-port and at-sea replenishment (see 20.0).

J. Local Detection Phase

Local Detection markers are placed on surface and submarine units occupying enemy Limited or Extended Detection Zones (see 9.2).

K. Action Phase

1. *First Action Segment:* The die is rolled to determine the "first" player. On an even roll, the NATO player is first; on an odd roll, the Soviet player is first. The first player states which type of units he will activate: surface, submarine, or air. After the first player has finished performing all actions with the chosen type, the second player selects a type of unit for activation and carries out all actions with these units (see 4.0).
2. *Second Action Segment:* The die is rolled to determine the first player. This player states the type of units he will activate (he cannot select the unit type chosen in the First Action Segment). After the first player's units have performed their actions, the second player chooses a unit type for activation (he cannot choose the type he selected in the First Action Segment) and carries out all actions with this type.
3. *Third Action Segment:* The die is rolled to determine the first player. This player activates the remaining unit type not activated so far and completes all actions with them. The second player then activates his last type of unit and completes all actions with them.

L. Local Detection Removal Phase

Some surface and submarine units that do not occupy enemy Detection Zones have their Local Detection markers removed (see 9.5).

M. CAP Landing Phase

All CAP units are returned to the airfield or aircraft carrier from which they started (see 8.4).

TERMINAL CYCLE (Night Game Turns only)

N. Fuel Phase *(Advanced Game; optional)*

Fuel expenditure for surface combat units is recorded on the Logistics Rosters (see 20.5).

O. Repair Phase *(Intermediate and Advanced Games)*

Damage 1 markers are removed from ports and airfields. Damage 2 markers are flipped to their Damage 1 side (see 14.2).

P. Strategic Air Mission Termination Phase

Air units on the Strategic Air Display are returned to their parent aircraft carrier or an airfield in the zone from which they started (see 7.5).

Q. Strategic Detection Removal Phase

All Strategic Detection markers are removed from units (see 9.5).

GAME TURN INDICATION

The Game Turn is now over. The Game Turn marker is advanced one space along the Game Turn Track. Players now go to the Strategic Cycle, if the next turn is an AM turn, or to the Activity Cycle, if the next turn is a PM or Night turn. This process is repeated until the game ends or an Armistice is declared (see 28.1).

Basic Game Rules

4.0 The Action Phase

"To be a successful soldier, you must know history. What you must know is how man reacts. Weapons change, but man who uses them not at all. To win battles, you do not beat weapons — you beat the soul of the enemy man."

— General George S. Patton

Most game activities take place during the Action Phase, which is composed of three Action Segments. During each Action Segment, a player moves and performs combat with units of a particular type (submarine, surface, or air). When he has finished activating units of the desired type, he states this fact aloud.

4.1 THE ACTION SEGMENTS

To determine who goes first in each Action Segment, the NATO player rolls the die. If the result is *even* (including "0"), the NATO player activates units first in the segment; if the result is *odd*, the Soviet player activates units first. This determination takes place at the beginning of all three Action Segments.

In the First Action Segment, the first player states the type of unit he will activate: surface, submarine, or air. He can then activate any or all of the units of that type. The second player then states which unit type he wishes to activate in the segment; he is not obligated to activate the same unit type as the first player.

In the Second Action Segment, after the first player is determined by die roll, each player activates a second unit type. Neither player can select the unit type that he activated in the First Action Segment. In the Third Action Segment, after the first player is determined by die roll, each player activates his last remaining unit type.

Should a player not have all three unit types, he must declare "pass" in any Action Segment of his choice in lieu of stating the unit type he does not possess. A player can also elect to "pass" in any Action Segment if he does not want to activate one of his unit types. When a player passes, he does not perform any activities in that Action Segment. For example, if the NATO player has air and surface units on the map but no submarines, is obligated to "pass" in any one of the Action Segments.

4.2 UNIT ACTIVATION

To be eligible for activation, a unit must belong to the unit type selected for the current segment (surface, submarine, or air), and it must *not* have been activated previously in that segment. For example, if a player announces "Air" at the start of an Action Segment, he can activate only air units in that segment. A player must complete the actions of each unit (or stack) before going on to activate another unit (or stack). To keep track of which units have already been activated in a segment, players can rotate their counters 90 degrees after they have completed their actions; at the end of the Action Segment, they should be rotated to their normal positions.

NOTABLE EXCEPTION: *Air units on CAP missions can perform combat during the enemy player's "Air" Action Segment. As long as CAP units do not return to base, they can perform combat several times in the enemy player's Air Action Segment (see 8.2).*

Air units on aircraft carriers are maintained off-map on the Aircraft Carrier Displays. When such units are activated, they are considered to occupy the same hex as their "parent" air-

craft carrier. Movement of air units between the map and these Displays occurs only when they are activated in a player's "Air" Action Segment.

4.3 LIMITATIONS ON ACTIVATION

The activation of units in an Action Segment is completely voluntary. A player is not obligated to activate any units in his surface, submarine, or air Action Segments. Units occupying different hexes cannot be activated together.

Surface Units: A player can activate any or all surface units that occupy the same hex at the beginning of an Action Segment. All surface units within a hex do *not* have to be activated at the same time; a player can choose to activate some surface units in a hex at one point in the segment and then activate other units later. However, all units that are activated together must perform their activities together in a stack (see 6.0).

The NATO player controls all non-Soviet units. NATO surface units of different nationalities can activate together without restriction.

Submarines: Submarine units must be activated *individually*. A submarine must complete its activities before another submarine is activated.

Air Units: A player can activate up to *four* air units (regardless of type) that are stacked together in the same hex. A player can activate fewer than four air units within a stack, but never more. NATO air units of different nationalities in the same airfield can be activated together.

Aircraft carrier air units are considered stacked together. These units can be activated individually or as stacks up to a limit of four per activation. If two or more aircraft carriers occupy the same hex, air units from different carriers can be activated as part of the same force (even if they are of different nationalities).

4.4 WHAT ACTIVATED UNITS CAN DO

Once a player has stated which unit type he will activate in an Action Segment, he can move and perform combat with each of his units (or stacks) of that type. A unit or stack must complete its activities before any other unit or stack is activated. Also, a unit can be activated only *once* per segment. When a unit is performing actions, no other unit — enemy or friendly — can move or attack, except for enemy CAP units (see 8.2).

Surface or air units that are stacked together and activated as a single force are considered *one* unit for activation purposes; they cannot split up and they must perform the same types of attacks. If an attack is made, not all the units in the stack must participate in the attack.

Surface Units: A surface unit or stack can move and/or attack in an Action Segment subject to the following restrictions:

1. It can move and not attack;
2. It can move and perform one or two attacks;
3. It can perform one or two attacks and then move;
4. It can perform one or two attacks and not move;
5. It can perform one attack, move, and then perform a second attack.

A surface unit can never perform two attacks of the same type in the same segment. Thus, in the Basic Game, a surface unit can perform one ASW and one SSM Combat in the same Action Segment (see 24.1 for "Cruise Missiles" and 24.9 for "Close Combat," which are forms of SSM Combat used only in the Advanced Game).

Example: A player has a stack of four surface combat units in a hex. He decides to activate the units together. He first performs ASW Combat against an adjacent detected enemy submarine, moves the stack, and then performs SSM Combat. He cannot have some units in the stack perform ASW and SSM Combat simultaneously; some units in the stack could first perform SSM Combat and subsequently some could perform ASW Combat at different times in the surface Action Segment.

Submarines: Each submarine unit is activated individually. A submarine can move and perform one attack, in any order, during an Action Segment.

Air Units: An air unit or stack can move and perform one attack at any time during its movement. Air units are the only ones that can interrupt their movement to attack. Air units must always begin and end their active status on a friendly airfield hex (or on an aircraft carrier of the same nationality; see 12.1).

4.5 THE ACTION SEGMENT TRACK

Each player receives three Action Segment markers labeled "Air," "Surf" (Surface), and "Sub" (Submarine). In order to remind the players which unit types have been selected for activation in all three segments of the Action Phase, the players should keep these markers nearby their Action Segment Tracks. As each player selects a type of unit for activation in a given Action Segment, he should place the appropriate marker in the box corresponding to the current segment on his track. At the end of the Action Phase, these markers should be removed from the track.

Example of Activation: The NATO player has a Norwegian F16 air unit in Bodo, the British surface units Arrow and Bdswd in Rosyth, and the US submarine NpNws in Holy Loch/Faslane. The Soviet player has a T26 air unit in Murmansk, the surface units Kiev and Tula in Pechenga, and no submarine units at all.

During the First Action Segment, the NATO player rolls a "2" and so goes first. He states "Surface" and decides to activate Arrow and Bdswd as a single stack. He moves these units together but performs no combat. (Otherwise, if detected Soviet

units were within range, he could have performed SSM and ASW Combat before or after moving, or one combat type before moving and the other type after moving). When he is finished, he places the NATO "Surface" marker in the "1st Action Segment" box of the NATO Action Segment Track. The Soviet player goes second and announces "Air." He activates the T26 unit, moving it from Murmansk and executing a single attack along the way. At the end of its activation it returns to Murmansk. The Soviet player places the Soviet "Air" marker in his "1st Action Segment" box.

In the Second Action Segment, on a roll of "3," the Soviet player goes first, announcing "pass" and performing no actions. The Soviet player places his "Submarine" marker in his "2nd Action Segment" box. The NATO player goes second and states "Air." He activates the F16 unit, moving it from Bodo to Andoya, but performs no combat along the way. He has no other air units, so he places the NATO "Air" marker in his "2nd Action Segment" box, indicating the end of the current Action Segment.

In the Third Action Segment, on a roll of "8," the NATO player goes first and states "Submarine," activating NpNws, moving it, and executing a single attack. Afterwards, he places the NATO "Submarine" marker in his "3rd Action Segment" box. The Soviet player goes second and announces "Surface." He decides to activate Kiev and Tula separately, moving Kiev to one hex and then moving Tula to another. Neither unit performs any combat. The Soviet player places the "Surface" marker in his "3rd Action Segment" box. The Action Phase is now over.

Note that in the example above, the Soviet player must pass in one of his Action Segments, since he has only two types of units on the map. A player can also elect to "pass" rather than activate a unit type, but he must place all three of his Action Segment markers on the Action Segment Track during the Action Phase. Once a player has passed with one of his unit types, placing an Action Segment marker on the track, he cannot in a later segment go back and activate the type he passed.

4.6 FIORDS

Units occupying fiord hexes can activate normally with one exception: Air units assigned to aircraft carriers that occupy a fiord hex cannot activate at all; they can, however, perform Strategic Air Missions and CAP (see 7.0 and 8.0).

5.0 Movement

"I wish to have no connection with any ship that does not sail fast, for I intend to go in harm's way."

— Captain John Paul Jones

The three different unit types (surface, submarine, and air) have different movement capabilities.

The hexes within the hexagonal grid superimposed over the mapsheets are divided into several different types. *Sea* hexes are composed entirely of water. *Land* hexes are composed entirely of land. *Coastal* hexes are composed of a combination of land and sea and are sub-divided into two types: *fiord* hexes (those containing the fiord symbology) and *non-fiord* hexes (those coastal hexes, including hexes containing islands, that do not possess this symbology). *Pack ice* hexes are composed entirely of ice. *Drift ice* hexes have some characteristics of sea and some of ice. *Sub-oceanic mountain* hexes are special hexes that affect "deep" movement by submarines (see 22.2). See the Terrain Summary in the Charts/Tables Booklet for a listing of the effects of the various terrain types.

No unit can ever voluntarily leave the map in any scenario in the game.

Note: In Basic and Intermediate Scenarios, all drift ice hexes are considered *sea* hexes, and the presence of sub-oceanic mountains is ignored. Special rules for drift ice hexes are taken into account only in the Advanced Game (see 16.2) as is the optional rule for sub-oceanic mountains.

5.1 HOW UNITS MOVE

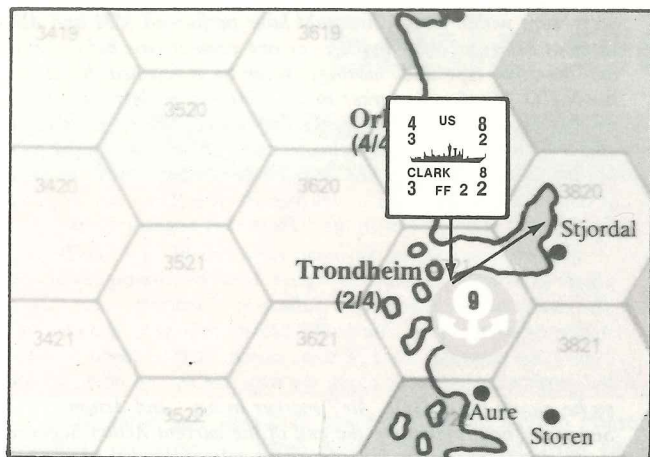
Each unit's Movement Allowance (printed directly on its counter) is the maximum number of hexes the unit can move when activated. A unit can move less than its printed Movement Allowance, but never more. When a unit moves, the owning player moves it from hex to contiguous hex on the map. Note that some units are prohibited from moving into certain types of hexes.

When activated together in a stack, surface or air units can move a number of hexes equal to the *lowest* Movement Allowance of a unit in the stack. A stack of units moved together cannot drop off a unit and continue moving; the stack must move, attack, and stop together.

5.2 SURFACE UNIT MOVEMENT

A surface unit can enter any sea, drift ice, or coastal hex; it can never enter a pack ice or land hex. During movement, surface units can move *through* hexes occupied by friendly or enemy units. Similarly, they can move *through* enemy base hexes without restriction. However, surface units may never end their active status stacked in the same hex as any enemy unit or base.

A surface unit can never enter a hex by crossing a hexside that is entirely composed of a land feature. For example, a surface unit in hex 3720 could not move directly into hex 3820; it first would have to move into hex 3721.



Special Norwegian Restrictions: Norwegian surface units can never enter a hex that is more than six hexes away from a Norwegian coastal hex.

Fiord Hexes: If a surface unit enters a fiord hex, it must stop in the hex and move no further during the current Action Segment. If a surface unit *begins* its movement in a fiord hex, its Movement Allowance is reduced by one-half (round fractions up).

5.3 SUBMARINE UNIT MOVEMENT

Except for movement in pack ice hexes, submarines are subject to the same movement restrictions as surface units, including fiord penalties. Remember that submarines must be activated individually.

Full Speed: Whenever a submarine unit is activated, the owning player may declare that his submarine will move at *full speed*. When a submarine is activated at full speed, its Movement Allowance is increased by *one*. However, a Strategic Detection marker (see 9.0) is immediately placed on the submarine; if there is already such a marker on the submarine unit, there is no further effect. A submarine unit starting its movement in a pack ice hex cannot move at full speed.

Pack Ice Hexes: Only nuclear submarines (SN) and ballistic missile submarines (SB) can enter pack ice hexes; diesel submarines (SS) cannot enter these hexes. When an SN or SB unit enters a pack ice hex, it must stop and move no further in the current Action Segment. If an SN or SB unit *begins* its movement in a pack ice hex, its Movement Allowance is always one.

5.4 AIR UNIT MOVEMENT

Air units can enter and move through any hex on the map, regardless of terrain or the presence of enemy or friendly units or bases. Air units have only one movement restriction: They must begin and end their active status on a friendly airfield or aircraft carrier. NATO air units can end their active status in any NATO airfield regardless of nationality. It is not necessary that an air unit end its active status in the airfield in which it began; it can change airfields at the end of its active status as long as the new airfield is within the Movement Allowance of the air unit. Remember that air units are the only units that can interrupt their movement to make an attack and then resume movement.

Aircraft Carriers: Air units beginning the game on an aircraft carrier (CV) unit must remain on this carrier for the duration of the game. Air units assigned to a carrier are destroyed if their parent carrier is sunk; air units on the Aircraft Carrier Display are immediately removed, air units on CAP are removed during the CAP Landing Phase, and air units on strategic missions are removed during the Strategic Air Mission Termination Phase (air units on CAP and strategic missions continue their missions until it is time for them to land). Air units not assigned to a carrier at the beginning of a game can *never* end their active status on a carrier.

International Borders: Air units can move through hexes of any country without restriction, including Finland and Sweden.



PORT



AIRFIELD



LANDING STRIP



PORT/AIRFIELD

5.5 BASE HEXES

There are four types of base hexes: ports, airfields, landing strips, and a port/airfield combination. Each base belongs either to the NATO or Soviet player (see the Terrain Key on the map). Several other values, which are used only in Intermediate and Advanced Scenarios, are also indicated. Although units can pass through enemy base hexes without restriction, they cannot *end* their movement in an enemy base. Air units must begin and end their activation on a friendly airfield or aircraft carrier — never on a landing strip (landing strips are used only for Victory Point purposes in the Advanced Game).

6.0 Stacking

"The age old dreams of our people have become a reality. The pennants of Soviet ships now flutter in the most remote corners of the seas and oceans. Our navy is a real force and possesses the ability to resolve successfully the task of defending the state interests of the Soviet Union and the whole socialist world."

— Admiral Sergei G. Gorshkov

A maximum of 12 friendly surface *combat* units (CV, CG, CL, DD, FF, BB, and PC) can end the surface unit Action Segment stacked together in the same hex. Non-combat surface units do not count towards the 12 unit maximum. Groups (see 6.2) can end an Action Segment in the same hex as long as the limit of 12 surface combat units per hex is observed.

Any number of friendly submarine units can stack together at the end of the submarine Action Segment. Submarines can

end their active status stacked in the same hex as friendly surface units (and vice versa) and do not count toward the stacking limit of the surface units.

A maximum of *four* friendly INT and/or ATK air units can occupy an airfield hex at any given time in a turn. (Friendly air units can move over an airfield in violation of this restriction.) RCN, EW, and AEW air units do not count against the four unit maximum. Air units situated in airfields in coastal hexes can occupy the same hex as surface and submarine units.

NATO units of different nationalities can occupy the same hex. NATO surface and air units stacked in the same hex can activate together without restriction. Opposing units can never occupy the same hex at the end of an Action Segment.

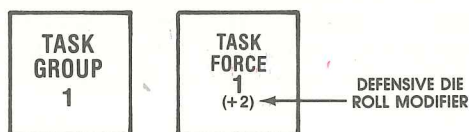
NOTABLE EXCEPTION: If the Tactical Nuclear rule (see 21.0) is being used, players can ignore the surface unit stacking restrictions of this section and can stack as many surface combat units in a hex as they wish (although a large stack will be a tempting target for a nuclear attack).

6.1 STACKING RESTRICTIONS

Movement: A player can activate any or all surface units in a hex as a stack, except for Groups (see 6.2), which must be activated separately. Up to four air units, regardless of type, can be activated from an airfield or aircraft carrier at one time. Submarines must be activated individually.

Position: The position of surface units within a stack is irrelevant until the opposing player declares a Bombing or SSM Combat against this stack; after the combat resolution starts, he can no longer adjust his ships' position. The position of air units within an active stack is always irrelevant.

If there are several Groups (Task Forces and/or Task Groups) in a hex, or Groups stacked with other surface units not in a Group, the Groups do not benefit each other or other units with their Close Anti-Air values when defensive combat occurs in SSM and Bombing Combat (see 10.4 and 10.5).



6.2 GROUPS

Groups are collections of surface units that perform their activities together. There are two types of Groups: Task Groups and Task Forces.

Creating Groups: At the beginning of a player's surface Action Segment, before the activation of any units, a player can create Groups from stacks of eligible surface units and adjust the status of already existing Groups. The creation and maintenance of Groups is voluntary: A player is never obligated to form a Group; similarly, he can break up his Groups at the beginning of his surface Action Segments if he wishes (and *must* break them up if they no longer fulfill size requirements for a Group). NATO units of different nationalities can belong to the same Group.

The creation of Groups is limited by the number of Task Group/Task Force markers available to a player. Each player has eight Group markers, printed "Task Group" on one side and "Task Force" on the other. If no Group marker is available to a player, he cannot create a new Group. However, as soon as Groups are disbanded, the markers immediately become available for use again.

To create a Group, a player points to a stack of eligible surface units and declares which units within the stack will comprise the Group. These units are removed from the map and are replaced by a Task Group or Task Force marker of the appropriate side (NATO or Soviet). If *two* or *three* combat units (CV, CL, CG, DD, FF, BB, PC) plus any number of non-combat units are chosen to comprise a Group, the player uses the *Task Group* side of the marker; if *four* or *more* combat units plus any number of non-combat units are chosen to comprise a Group, the player uses the *Task Force* side of the marker. Note that at least two *combat* units must be in a stack before a Group can be formed. More than one Group can be created from a single stack of surface units.

When surface units are selected to form a Group, the owning player places them on his Task Group/Force Display in the boxes corresponding to the numbered Task Group/Task Force marker that replaced them. On the display, one surface unit is placed per box — the order of placement is considered the order in which the units are stacked (Box 1 being considered the top of the stack). If a Group contains more units than there are boxes, place the extra units at the end of the row of boxes.

Enhancement of Groups: At the beginning of a player's surface Action Segment, he can add surface units to existing Groups as long as they are situated in the same hex. Remove the units being added to the Group from the map and place them on the Task Force/Group Display in the boxes corresponding to their new Task Group/Force. If the addition of ships changes a Task Group to a Task Force, the marker on the map should be flipped to the correct side.

Disbanding Groups: At the beginning of a player's surface Action Segment, he can disband any of his Groups. To do so, he removes the Task Group/Force marker and places the surface units that comprise this Group back on the map. If, due to combat losses, a Group falls below minimum size requirements, the owning player must adjust this Group (see below).

Combining Groups: At the beginning of a player's surface unit Action Segment, he can combine any of his Groups that occupy the same hex. The combined Group is represented by a single Group marker (all other Group markers are removed) and the placement of the surface units on the Task Group/Force Display is adjusted to reflect the new Group's structure. If the new Group has four or more combat units in it, use the "Task Force" side of the marker.

Groups and Combat Losses: If, due to combat losses, a Task Force falls below four combat units (or a Task Group falls below two combat units), the owning player must adjust the status of this Group at the beginning of his surface unit Action Segment by disbanding the Group or combining it with another in the same hex. (If a Task Force falls below four combat units, it can be adjusted by simply flipping the marker over to its "Task Group" side, assuming it still has two or three combat units.)

Note that Group creation, adjustment, and disbandment takes place only at the *beginning* of a player's surface Action Segment. Even if a Group falls below minimum size requirements due to losses, its marker remains unchanged until the player's *next* surface Action Segment.

Movement: A Group marker functions as a surface unit in all respects. It can move a number of hexes equal to the lowest Movement Allowance of any unit within the Group. Groups stacked in the same hex must be activated individually. If a Group is activated, it must move and attack as a stack; no unit can separate from the Group until the next surface Action Segment. Remember that each time units in a Group perform combat, those that are participating must perform the same type of combat (that is, some units cannot perform SSM Combat while others perform ASW Combat at the same time).

Defense Combat Benefit: Units belonging to a *Task Force* that are attacked by Torpedo, SSM, or Bombing Combat receive a +2 modifier to Defensive combat die rolls (see 10.1). Units belonging to a *Task Group* do not receive this benefit.

7.0 Strategic Air Missions

"There is, in fact, no real choice for western Europe. The inescapable necessity for the whole of NATO is to bend the efforts of foreign policy to repairing the cracks appearing in the Alliance and to recognize that there are long-term strategic concerns that override short and medium-term conflicts of economic interests because they are not matters simply of stability and prosperity but of survival."

— The Right Hon. The Lord Chalfont

Air units can be assigned to Strategic Air Mission during the Strategic Air Phase, which occurs during AM Game Turns. A unit assigned to a strategic mission cannot be activated during the next three Action Phases (AM, PM, Night). When performing strategic missions, air units are placed on the Strategic Air Display.

7.1 MISSION ELIGIBILITY

There are three strategic missions to which air units can be assigned in the Basic Game:

1. Interception
2. Reconnaissance
3. Tactical Coordination

Note: A fourth mission, Mining, can be used as an optional rule in the Advanced Game (see 23.0).

Strategic Air Mission Eligibility Chart: This chart (see the map) determines the kinds of strategic missions each air unit type can undertake. There are five types of air units: Interceptor (INT), Attack (ATK), Reconnaissance (RCN), Electronic Warfare (EW), and Airborne Early Warning (AEW). Some air types are prohibited from undertaking certain missions; for example, an INT unit can never be assigned to a Mining mission.

Strategic Air Display: Each player has a Strategic Air Display on the map on which air units on strategic missions are placed. The display is divided into eight zones, each of which is labeled (for example, "Barents Sea"). Each zone is also delineated on the map with borders corresponding to the configuration of the Strategic Air Display. Each zone on the map has four "mission" boxes, plus additional "Return to Base" boxes (see 7.5).

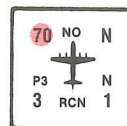
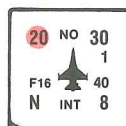
During the Allocation Segment of the Strategic Air Phase, each player secretly assigns any or all eligible air units to strategic missions. Such units are placed on the display in the desired mission boxes. To assign an air unit to a strategic mission:

1. Decide the type of mission the unit will perform;
2. Decide the zone in which it will be placed;
3. Pick the unit up from its airfield hex or aircraft carrier and place it in the desired mission box on the display.

Damaged air units can perform strategic missions normally. NATO air units of different nationalities can perform missions in the same zone without restriction.

Zone Range of Air Units: An air unit is considered to occupy the zone in which its airfield or aircraft carrier is situated. However, some air units can perform missions at extended ranges. The Movement Allowance of an air unit determines the range (in zones) at which it can perform a mission:

MOVEMENT ALLOWANCE	RANGE
71 or more	3 zones
51-70	2 zones
26-50	1 zone
25 or less	Only in zone occupied



● MOVEMENT ALLOWANCE

Example: Two Norwegian air units occupy the airfield at Andoya in the Norwegian Sea Zone. One is an F16 INT unit (Movement Allowance: 20) and the other is a P3 RCN unit (Movement Allowance: 70). The NATO player decides to assign both units to strategic missions. The F16 can be assigned to either a Reconnaissance or an Interception mission and can operate only in the Norwegian Sea Zone (since its Movement Allowance is 25 or less). The P3 can be assigned to either Reconnaissance or a Tactical Coordination mission and can operate on any zone on the map (since its Movement Allowance is in the 51-70 range, it can operate up to two zones away from the one it occupies; there is no zone on the map that is more than two zones away from the Norwegian Sea Zone).

Ending Strategic Air Missions: An air unit remains on its assigned mission until it is destroyed, it is forced to "Return to Base" (see 7.5), or until the Strategic Air Mission Termination Phase of the next Night Game Turn.

Solitaire Mission Assignment (Optional): To simulate the uncertainty of mission assignment when playing the game solitaire, a player may wish to use the following optional rule:

1. Roll the die. On an even roll (including "0"), the player places a NATO air unit on a mission; on an odd roll, he places a Soviet air unit on a mission.
2. Continue to roll the die and assign air units to missions in this fashion until the player either does not wish to assign anymore air units to air missions, or a "9" is rolled at which point no more air units can be assigned. Note that if a "9" is rolled on the first four Mission Allocation die rolls, the result is ignored and the die is rolled again.

7.2 INTERCEPTION MISSIONS

Air units on Interception missions can attack enemy units on strategic missions in the same zone.

Interception Segment: During this segment of the Strategic Air Phase, opposing air units on Interception missions within the same zone must perform Air-to-Air Combat. First, the players should check each other's Strategic Air Displays, zone by zone; a single Air-to-Air Combat must take place within a given zone if both players have assigned air units to Interception missions within that zone. If only one (or neither) player has assigned air units to Interception within that zone, Air-to-Air Combat does not take place. Thus, from 0 to 8 Air-to-Air Combats can take place during this segment. When performing Air-to-Air Combat in a given zone, a player's air units on Interception must be combined into a single force for combat (including NATO units of different nationalities). See 10.7 for an explanation of how to perform Air-to-Air Combat.

After Air-to-Air Combat has taken place, any air units that are allowed to continue their Interception missions (that is, they were not obligated to return to base as a result of combat) can proceed to initiate Air-to-Air Combat in the Bounce Segment. Air units that receive an "r" result in combat are placed in one of the "Return to Base" boxes on the Strategic Air Display (see 7.5).

Bounce Segment: During this segment, air units still on Interception missions can initiate combat against all enemy air units in the same zone that are on non-Interception missions — Reconnaissance, Tactical Coordination, and Mining (if this optional rule is being used). To perform this combat, the Interception player rolls the die and consults the "Bounce" column of the Air-to-Air Combat Results Table (no combat ratio is calculated). The result is applied as described in Case 10.7; this

result applies to *all* enemy air units currently on non-Interception missions in that zone, regardless of quantity or type. The air units on Interception missions that initiated this combat can never suffer an adverse result when "bouncing" enemy units. At the end of the Bounce Segment, all units on Interception missions are automatically placed in one of the "Return to Base" boxes on the Strategic Air Display (see 7.5).

Example of Interception: During the Strategic Air Phase, the NATO player assigns two US air units to Interception missions in the Iceland Zone. At the same time, the Soviet player assigns one air unit to Interception, one unit to Reconnaissance, and one unit to Tactical Coordination in the Iceland Zone. During the Interception Segment, Air-to-Air Combat takes place between the two US air units and the single Soviet unit on Interception. Assume the NATO player wins this combat; his two units remain on Interception and the Soviet unit returns to base. In the Bounce Segment, the US units attack the Soviet units on Reconnaissance and Tactical Coordination. The NATO player rolls the die and consults the "Bounce" column of the Air-to-Air Combat Results Table. Assume the result calls for one Soviet unit's elimination, while the second unit must return to base. At the end of the Bounce Segment, the two US units must return to base.

7.3 RECONNAISSANCE MISSIONS

Air units on Reconnaissance missions affect the detection of enemy units, which occurs in the Strategic Detection Segment of the Strategic Air Phase (see 9.0). At the end of this segment, all air units on Reconnaissance missions are placed in one of the "Return to Base" boxes in the zone they occupy (see 7.5).

7.4 TACTICAL COORDINATION MISSIONS

Air units on Tactical Coordination missions are used to enhance attacks made on enemy units during the following three Action Phases (AM, PM, and Night). For each air unit assigned to Tactical Coordination, the owning player adds one to any combat die roll made during an attack (except Air-to-Air Combat) against an enemy unit that occupies the zone in which the Tactical Coordination mission is taking place. Up to three air units can contribute to this bonus in any single attack; thus, a *maximum of three* can be added to any attack die roll. The owning player must announce that he is using this Tactical Coordination bonus *before* the combat die roll is made. After an air unit on a Tactical Coordination mission provides this bonus to an attack, it is placed in one of the "Return to Base" boxes in the zone it occupies (see 7.5).

7.5 RETURNING TO BASE

Air units that receive an "r" result in Air-to-Air Combat during the Strategic Air Phase are placed in one of the "Return to Base" boxes in the zone they occupy on the Strategic Air Display. A unit in one of these boxes can perform no function.

Return to Base Boxes: There are four Return to Base boxes in each zone on the Strategic Air Display. Each box corresponds to the zone from which an air unit was moved to perform its strategic mission. Units that began a mission in the zone they

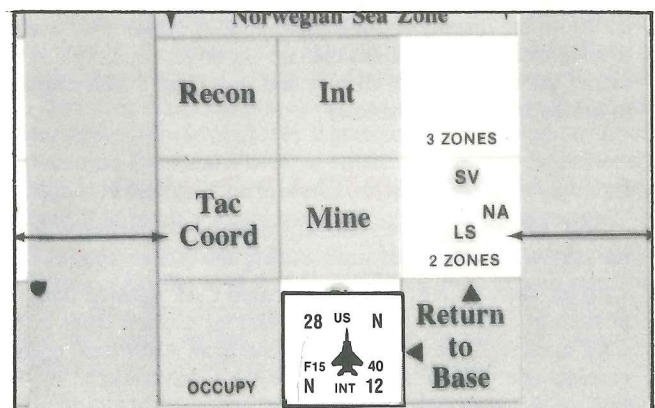
occupy are placed in the "Occupy" box when forced to return to base; units that moved one zone to perform their mission are placed in the "1 Zone" box when forced to return to base; and units that moved two or three zones are placed in the "2 Zones" or "3 Zones" box, respectively, when forced to return to base. Each of these four boxes includes the initials of the zone which the air unit left to perform its mission; when an air unit is placed in a Return to Base box, turn the counter so that its top points in the direction of the initials of the zone from which it came.

Interception and Reconnaissance missions (in addition to Mining missions, if this optional rule is used) are resolved during the Strategic Air Phase; players should be able to remember the zones from which their air units began. Tactical Coordination units provide combat bonuses during the Action Phases; players having difficulty remembering the zones from which these air units began their missions may wish to write them down on a piece of paper.

Strategic Air Mission Termination Phase: During this phase, which takes place during Night Game Turns, all units on the Strategic Air Display are placed back on an airfield hex or aircraft carrier. Air units that initiated their strategic mission from an airfield can be placed on any airfield hex within the zone in which they began their mission subject to stacking restrictions (see 6.1). If no friendly airfield is available, the air units are destroyed.

Air units that initiated their mission from an aircraft carrier must be returned to the same Aircraft Carrier Display from which they began their mission (the carrier may have moved to another zone in the interim; this displacement does not affect the return of its air units). If the carrier was destroyed in a previous Action Phase, all its air units on strategic missions are destroyed in the Strategic Air Mission Termination Phase.

Example: A US air unit based in Wick (in the British Isles Zone) is assigned to an Interception mission in the Norwegian Sea Zone. After the unit completes its mission, it is placed in the "1 Zone" Return to Base box of the Norwegian Sea Zone with the top of the counter pointing to the initials "BI" (British Isles). During the Strategic Air Mission Termination Phase, the unit can be returned to any airfield in the British Isles, subject to stacking restrictions.



8.0 Combat Air Patrol (CAP)

"Westminster Abbey or victory!"

— Admiral Horatio Nelson

CAP is a special role for air units that allows them to "stand guard" over an airfield or aircraft carrier.

8.1 HOW TO PERFORM CAP

During the CAP Phase, players can assign any or all of their INT or AEW air units that are not on strategic missions to CAP. The Soviet player declares CAP missions first, followed by the NATO player. (NATO units of different nationalities can combine in the same CAP mission.) When placed on CAP, air units cannot be activated during the Action Phase.

Each airfield or aircraft carrier can assign *three* air units to a CAP mission. If two or more carriers occupy the same hex, or a carrier is situated in an airfield hex, all CAP units must be combined into a single CAP mission. As long as each airfield or carrier does not assign more than three units to a CAP mission, each mission can contain an unlimited number of air units. Should carriers providing air units in a combined CAP mission separate (or leave an airfield with which they combined in a CAP mission), the owning player must break up the combined mission and provide a separate CAP marker for each carrier and airfield that provided CAP units.

CAP markers on airfield hexes can never be moved. CAP markers on aircraft carriers are moved as the carriers are moved.

Aircraft carriers can initiate CAP missions in fiord hexes.

CAP Display: Each player has a CAP Display for maintaining air units on CAP missions. This display consists of a series of numbered boxes; CAP markers are provided to each player that correspond with these boxes. Air units on a CAP mission are removed from the map and are placed in one of the boxes on the display. The CAP marker corresponding to that box is placed on the map in the hex from which the air units were removed. A hex can contain only one CAP marker. The number of CAP boxes on the display is not a limitation. A player who wishes to have more CAP missions than he has boxes should place the extra CAP units near the display and should use blank counters to create more CAP markers.

8.2 CAP AND AIR-TO-AIR COMBAT

A CAP marker allows friendly air units to interfere with the movement of enemy air units during the Action Phase.

Carrier-Based CAP: If a carrier-based CAP mission does not possess an AEW air unit in the mission, use the front of the CAP marker. If the mission does contain an AEW unit, use the reverse side ("CAP & AEW") of the CAP marker.

Range of CAP Missions: A CAP mission has a range of *four* hexes (exclusive of the hex the CAP marker occupies). When an active enemy air unit or stack moves into a hex that is within range of a CAP mission, the movement of the enemy air unit(s) temporarily ceases. The CAP player has a choice: He can engage the enemy air units in Air-to-Air Combat in their hex, or he can do nothing. In the first instance, Air-to-Air Combat between all the units in the attacking CAP mission and all the defending enemy units is immediately resolved (see 10.7). In the second instance, no combat takes place and the enemy units can continue their movement.

A CAP mission can make a maximum of one attack against a given enemy air unit or stack in an Action Segment; however, it can perform other attacks against different air units in that segment. The CAP player can choose to attack enemy units any

time they move within the CAP marker's range. If it did not attack at a range of four hexes, it could attack at a range of three, two, or one hexes. It cannot attack enemy air units in the hex occupied by the CAP marker.

The range of friendly CAP missions can overlap. If enemy air units enter a hex within range of two or more CAP missions, the CAP player can attack the enemy air units with each CAP mission separately. (Different CAP missions can never combine in an attack.) Enemy air units can be attacked an unlimited number of times by CAP missions in the Action Phase, *but they can be attacked by a given CAP mission only once.*

Friendly and enemy CAP missions can overlap without affecting each other. CAP missions affect only enemy air units moving through its range, never enemy CAP missions.

Limitation to CAP Attacks: A CAP mission can initiate an unlimited number of combats against *different* enemy air units or stacks during the Action Phase, as long as the CAP mission does not suffer an "r" (Return to Base) result in combat. Units in the CAP Display's Return to Base box cannot initiate combat.

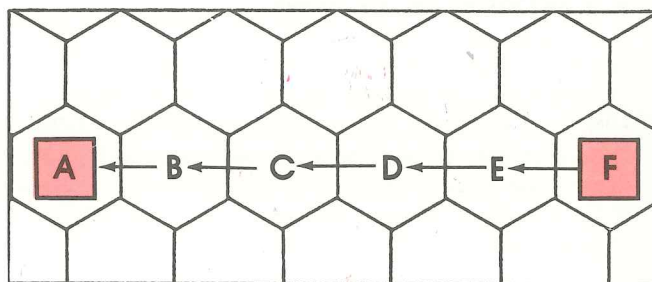
Air-to-Air Combat between a CAP mission and enemy air units is resolved *before* the enemy units initiate any combat in the hex into which they have just moved. If the enemy units survive Air-to-Air Combat, they can initiate an attack from that hex or can continue moving and then attack.

CAP Combat Values: Air units on CAP missions over airfield hexes use their full Anti-Air value when initiating Air-to-Air Combat against enemy air units at any range.

Air units on CAP missions over aircraft carriers can have their Anti-Air values modified. The range from the carrier at which a CAP mission initiates Air-to-Air Combat against enemy units and the presence of an AEW unit in the mission both can affect this modification. The Aircraft Carrier CAP Chart on the map lists the modifications to Anti-Air values of CAP units on aircraft carriers. The minimum Anti-Air value of air units on a CAP mission is one, even if this value would normally be modified to zero by the Aircraft Carrier CAP Chart.

Note that, if the AEW unit is a UK SKG unit or Soviet HLX unit, the modification at a 4-hex range is $\frac{1}{8}$, not $\frac{1}{4}$.

NOTABLE EXCEPTION: When an aircraft carrier is in a friendly airfield hex and has a combined CAP mission with the airfield, all CAP units in that mission use their full Anti-Air value at any range. The Aircraft Carrier CAP Chart is not consulted.



Example: The NATO player has a CAP marker in hex A (an airfield hex). The Soviet player activates an air unit in hex F and moves it into hex E. Since this hex is within the range of the CAP mission, the unit's movement is halted and the NATO player has his choice of attacking the Soviet unit or not. The NATO player decides not to attack, so the unit can continue to move. The air unit is moved into hex D, and the NATO player again has the choice to attack. Again, he decides not to attack. The Soviet player moves his air unit into hex C, and the NATO player still decides not to attack. When the Soviet player moves his unit into hex B, the NATO player decides to attack. Air-to-Air Combat is resolved in hex B. After the combat is resolved, the Soviet player, if his unit survives, has the option to continue moving or to initiate an attack.

Now assume that hex A is not an airfield, but instead contains an aircraft carrier with a CAP marker on it and that the combined Anti-Air value is 19, plus there is an AEW unit with the CAP mission. If the NATO player engages the enemy unit at a four hex range, the modified Anti-Air value of the CAP mission is 5 ($19 \times \frac{1}{4} = 5$, rounding fractions up); if the CAP mission did not contain the AEW unit, it would have a combined Anti-Air value of 3 ($19 \times \frac{1}{6} = 3$, rounding up).

If the CAP mission attacked at a three hex range, the combined Anti-Air value would be 10 ($19 \times \frac{1}{2} = 10$, rounding up) or 5 ($19 \times \frac{1}{4} = 5$, rounding up), depending on whether the CAP mission included an AEW unit or not. At a two-hex range the CAP mission would attack at its full strength ($19 \times 1 = 19$) with the AEW unit and at 10 ($19 \times \frac{1}{2} = 10$, rounding up) without the AEW unit. At a one-hex range, the CAP mission would attack at full strength whether an AEW unit is with the CAP mission or not.

8.3 CAP AND SSM COMBAT

If a CAP marker is stacked in the same hex as a surface unit that is being attacked by an enemy SSM combat, the CAP mission can aid in the defense of that surface unit (see 10.4 for details). This contribution takes place as long as the CAP units have not been forced to return to base; the CAP units can have participated in Air-to-Air Combats at an earlier point in the Action Phase.

8.4 RETURNING TO BASE

Air units that are attacked by a CAP mission and suffer an "r" result are immediately returned to the airfield or to the Aircraft Carrier Display from where they started. If these units have moved half their Movement Allowance or less, the owning player picks them up and returns them to their original locations.

(They cannot be activated for the rest of the Action Phase.) If they have moved more than half their Movement Allowance before suffering an "r" result at the hands of a CAP mission, the owning player must be able to reach a friendly airfield that is within range of the remaining Movement Allowance or else they are destroyed.

If CAP units suffer an "r" result in Air-to-Air Combat, all the air units comprising that mission are immediately placed in the Return to Base box on the CAP Display, directly beneath their normal CAP box. Units in the Return to Base box can perform no functions whatsoever during the remainder of the Action Phase.

If enemy units attacked by a CAP mission do not contain any INT units, "r" results against the CAP mission are ignored (see 10.7).

CAP Landing Phase: During this phase, all air units on the CAP Display, including those in Return to Base boxes, are placed back on the airfield or aircraft carrier in which the CAP markers are located. The CAP markers are then removed from the map.

CAP units can return to airfields or carriers that are damaged. If an airfield occupied by a CAP marker has been destroyed in the immediately preceding Action Phase, the CAP units can return to any friendly airfields in the same zone, subject to stacking restrictions (see 6.1); if no friendly airfield is available in the zone, the air units are destroyed. Air units on CAP belonging to an aircraft carrier that is destroyed are eliminated during the CAP Landing Phase; these units continue to perform CAP throughout the Action Phase of the Game Turn in which they were assigned to their mission.

9.0 Detection

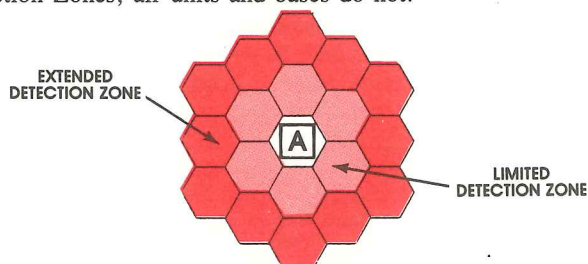
"Whether they will or no, Americans must begin to look outward."

— Alfred Thayer Mahan

Detection is a means of pinpointing the location of enemy surface or submarine units so that they can subsequently be destroyed. A unit or stack that has been detected has a Detection marker placed on it. There are two types of Detection markers: Strategic and Local. Air units and bases do not need to be detected.

9.1 DETECTION ZONES

There are two types of Detection Zones: *Limited Detection Zones*, consisting of the hex occupied by a unit plus the six hexes immediately surrounding it; and *Extended Detection Zones*, consisting of the twelve additional hexes surrounding the Limited Detection Zone. Only surface and submarine units have Detection Zones; air units and bases do not.



Example: In the diagram above, unit A has a Limited Detection Zone in the hex it occupies plus the six lightly shaded hexes around it. It has an Extended Detection Zone in the twelve darker shaded hexes around them.

Determining Detection Zones: All submarines exert Limited Detection Zones. All surface units or stacks have both a Limited Detection Zone and an Extended Detection Zone.

9.2 PLACEMENT OF DETECTION MARKERS

When a Soviet unit is detected, place a "Soviet" Detection marker on it; when a NATO unit is detected (regardless of nationality), place a "NATO" Detection marker on it. When a Detection marker is placed on a unit, it remains with that unit and moves with it wherever it goes until the Strategic or Local Detection Removal Phase, at which time it may be removed. Each submarine or surface unit or stack can possess only one Detection marker (Strategic or Local) at any given time.

Strategic Detection Segment: This segment occurs in the Strategic Air Phase of AM Game Turns. For each air unit currently on a Reconnaissance mission in a given zone (see 7.3), the owning player has a choice during the Strategic Detection Segment (Soviet player first, NATO second):

1. He can place a Strategic ("Strat") Detection marker on any enemy surface unit or stack that occupies the zone in which the Reconnaissance mission is taking place.
2. He can attempt to place a Strategic Detection marker on any enemy submarine that occupies the zone in which the Reconnaissance mission is taking place.

A submarine in a pack ice hex can never be detected by Strategic Detection.

To attempt to place a Strategic Detection marker on an enemy submarine, the player points to the enemy submarine he wishes to detect and determines its nationality and type (SB, SN, Noisy SN, or SS). He consults the Submarine Detection Table and rolls the die, cross-referencing the die result with the column corresponding to the submarine's nationality and type. On a result of "D," a Strategic Detection marker is placed on the

submarine (if it already has a Local Detection marker on it, flip the marker to its Strategic ("Strat") Detection side). On a result of "-", the attempt has failed and no marker is placed. If an attempt to detect a submarine fails, other air units on Reconnaissance missions can attempt to detect the submarine again in the segment.

NOTABLE EXCEPTIONS: *An INT or ATK air unit on a Reconnaissance mission can never attempt to detect a submarine unit. Soviet T16D and T95D RCN air units cannot attempt to detect submarine units.*

Once an air unit on a Reconnaissance mission has placed (or attempted to place) a Strategic Detection marker on an enemy unit, it is placed in one of the Return to Base boxes in the zone it occupies on the Strategic Air Display (see 7.5).

Local Detection Phase: This phase occurs in all Game Turns. Only Local Detection markers are placed during this phase — never Strategic Detection markers.

1. In this phase, a Local Detection marker is placed on each enemy surface unit or stack that occupies the Limited or Extended Detection zone of a friendly surface unit or stack, or the Limited Detection Zone of a friendly submarine.
2. In this phase, a Local Detection marker is placed on each enemy submarine that occupies a Limited Detection Zone and the friendly surface unit(s) and/or submarine(s) exerting this Limited Detection Zone have a combined ASW value of 6 or more. No Detection marker is placed on the enemy submarine if the friendly units exerting the Limited Detection Zone into the hex containing the enemy submarine have a combined ASW value of 5 or less. *All* units exerting a Limited Detection Zone into a hex containing an enemy submarine combine their ASW values for detection purposes.

Units already possessing a Local or Strategic Detection marker cannot be further affected in this phase, even if they meet the requirements of local detection. Their current detection status remains unaltered.

Action Phase: There are four ways Detection markers can be placed on units during the Action Phase:

1. If a surface unit or stack executes an SSM or ASW attack and it is situated in an enemy unit's Limited Detection Zone *after* the attack has been resolved, place a Local Detection marker on that surface unit (or stack). If a submarine executes a Torpedo, SSM or ASW attack and it is situated in an enemy unit's Limited Detection Zone *after* the attack has been resolved, place a Local Detection marker on that submarine.
2. At the moment an enemy surface unit or stack moves directly from one Limited or Extended Detection Zone exerted by a friendly unit(s) into another Limited or Extended Detection Zone exerted by the same unit(s), a Local Detection marker is placed on the enemy unit or stack. If an enemy submarine moves from one Limited Detection Zone exerted by friendly units with a combined ASW value of 6 or more to another Limited Detection Zone exerted by the same units, a Local Detection marker is placed on the enemy submarine.
3. As soon as a player declares that one of his submarines will move at full speed (see 5.3), he must place a Strategic Detection marker on it.
4. At the moment any Soviet surface unit or stack enters a coastal hex of Great Britain or Norway (not counting hexes composed entirely of islands), a Strategic Detection marker must be placed on that unit or stack.

Note: Even though Spitsbergen is part of Norway, Soviet surface units are *not* detected when they enter a coastal hex in the Spitsbergen island group.

If a unit already has a Strategic Detection marker, it cannot be further detected during the Action Phase. If it possesses a

Local Detection marker, it is not further detected unless it fulfills the requirements for receiving a Strategic Detection marker, in which case its Local Detection marker is flipped over to its Strategic side.

● NOISY SUBMARINE INDICATION

2	SO	22
5		6
OKA		6
3	SN	N

9.3 DETECTION RESTRICTIONS

Submarines: The detection status of submarines is determined individually. If several submarines within the same hex are detected, each must be assigned its own Detection marker. Undetected submarines entering a hex with a detected submarine remain undetected. Thus, it is possible for a hex to contain both detected and undetected submarines. A submarine can never have more than one Detection marker.

Surface Units: The detection of surface units is determined by hex. When a Detection marker is placed on a surface unit, *all* surface units in the hex are immediately detected. If a surface unit or stack that is not detected ends an Action Segment in the same hex as a detected surface unit or stack, the undetected unit or stack is immediately detected. (Similarly, if a surface unit or stack that has a Local Detection marker ends an Action Segment in a hex with a surface unit or stack possessing a Strategic Detection marker, the Local Detection marker immediately becomes a Strategic Detection marker.) The reverse is also true; a detected surface unit or stack that ends an Action Segment in the same hex as an undetected surface unit or stack immediately causes that unit or stack to be detected. If a stack of detected surface units is activated into separate forces, all the units in the separate forces are detected and Detection markers are placed in all hexes in which these units end their movement.

Undetected surface units that end an Action Segment in the same hex with a detected submarine are not detected. The reverse also holds true. In effect, the detection status of submarines does not affect surface units and vice versa.

Group markers are considered surface units; if a Group is detected, all units that comprise it (and any other surface units in the same hex) are detected. A surface unit or stack can never have more than one Detection marker.

Base Hexes: Base hexes are automatically detected at all times. However, submarine and surface units occupying bases must be detected in order to be attacked.

9.4 EFFECTS OF DETECTION

Surface or submarine units must have a Detection marker (either Local or Strategic) in order to be attacked. Should a detected submarine occupy a hex with an undetected submarine, only the detected unit can be attacked. All surface units in a hex that contains a Detection marker can be attacked.

9.5 REMOVING DETECTION MARKERS

There are two methods of removing Detection markers:

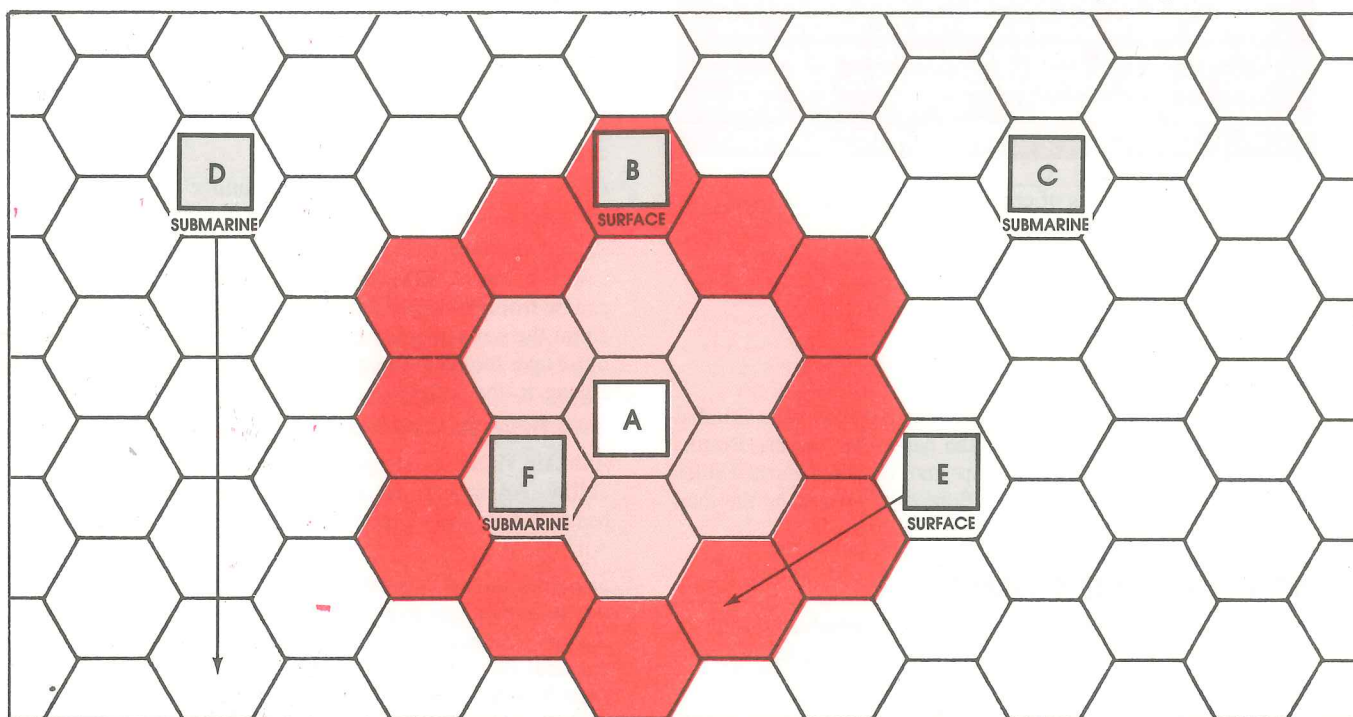
Strategic Detection Removal Phase: This phase occurs during Night Game Turns only. In this phase, *all* Strategic Detection markers are removed from surface and submarine units, regardless of their location.

NOTABLE EXCEPTION: *In the Advanced Game, Strategic Detection markers are not removed from Soviet submarines in or within 3 hexes of SOSUS hexes (see 19.2).*

Local Detection Removal Phase: This phase occurs in all Game Turns. During this phase, all Local Detection markers are removed from surface and submarine units, with the following exceptions:

1. *Surface Units:* Enemy surface units or stacks that are situated within the Limited or Extended Detection Zones of friendly units during this phase do not have their Local Detection markers removed.

2. *Submarines:* Enemy submarines that are situated within the Limited Detection Zone exerted by friendly units with a combined ASW value of 6 or more do not have their Local Detection markers removed during this phase.



Example of Detection: Unit A is a NATO surface unit with an ASW value of 4, exerting a Limited and Extended Detection Zone as shown. Assume the NATO unit already possesses a Strategic Detection marker, so it cannot be further affected. Units B and E are Soviet surface units; units C, D, and F are Soviet submarines.

In the Strategic Detection Segment of the AM Game Turn, assume the NATO player has assigned one NATO air unit to a Reconnaissance mission in this zone. It attempts to detect Soviet submarine C. In this case, the NATO player's detection attempt succeeds on the Submarine Detection Table; thus, a Strategic Detection marker is placed on unit C. In the Local Detection Phase of the AM Game Turn, a Local Detection marker is placed on Soviet surface unit B because it occupies the Extended Detection Zone of a NATO unit. A Local Detection marker is not

placed on Soviet submarine unit F because the NATO unit exerting the Limited Detection Zone has an ASW value of less than 6.

In the Action Phase, Soviet submarine D moves at full speed in the path shown. As soon as the Soviet player announces that it will move at full speed, he places a Strategic Detection marker on that unit. Soviet surface unit E moves in the indicated path. As soon as it does, a Local Detection marker is placed on it because it moved directly from one NATO Extended Detection Zone to another. Finally, Soviet submarine F executes a Torpedo attack against the NATO unit. Assuming the NATO unit survives the attack, a Local Detection marker is placed on unit F because it occupies the Limited Detection Zone of a NATO unit after it executed an attack.

10.0 Combat

"I cannot conceive of a NATO war in which we would not be putting not one, but several carrier battle groups into the Norwegian Sea at some point. What we must do is to seek out and destroy the Soviet capacity to interdict our uses of the sea."

— Secretary of the Navy John Lehman

There are five kinds of combat that can occur in the game:

1. Torpedo
2. Surface-to-Surface Missile (SSM)
3. Bombing
4. Anti-Submarine Warfare (ASW)
5. Air-to-Air

The first four kinds of combat are resolved using the Combat Results Table and the last kind on the Air-to-Air Combat Results Table (both printed on the map and in the Charts/Tables Booklets). Note that the Combat Summary printed on the map uses "AA" as the abbreviation for "Anti-Air."

10.1 INITIATING COMBAT

Only an active unit or stack can initiate combat. To do so, the owning player states the type of attack and the enemy units that are the targets.

Surface Units: Enemy surface units must possess Detection markers before they can be attacked. A surface unit can perform up to two attacks during its activation; one attack may be ASW and the other SSM (the same type cannot be initiated twice in a single activation). Surface units activated together are considered a single unit for combat purposes — regardless of how many units comprise the stack, it is still limited to two attacks per activation. NATO units of different nationalities can combine in a stack and perform combat together.

Submarines: An enemy submarine unit must possess a Detection marker before it can be attacked. Each submarine attacks and is attacked separately.

Air Units: Air units never possess Detection markers. They can be attacked by defensive fire in Bombing Combat and by enemy air units on CAP missions.

Base Hexes: Base hexes never possess Detection markers. Bases cannot be attacked in Introductory Scenarios. Surface and submarine units in a base must be detected before they can be attacked. They can be attacked by any form of combat while in a base except by Torpedo Combat, which is prohibited against surface units situated in a base hex.

Pack Ice Hexes: Only SN or SB submarines can enter pack ice hexes. When occupying a pack ice hex, an SN or SB can only initiate ASW combat — and only against another SN or SB also in a pack ice hex. Moreover, an SN or SB in a pack ice hex can be attacked only by ASW Combat initiated by another SN or SB that is also in a pack ice hex.

Combat Bonuses: Two forms of bonuses can be applied to combat:

1. **Tactical Coordination:** For each air unit assigned to a Tactical Coordination mission in a zone, the owning player can add one to any Attack die roll (except in Air-to-Air Combat) up to a maximum of three per combat (see 7.4).
2. **Task Forces:** Surface units that are part of a Task Force and which are the targets of Torpedo, SSM, or Bombing attacks receive a +2 modifier to all Defensive die rolls. Units that are part of a Task Group do not receive this bonus. Units

that belong neither to a Task Force nor to a Task Group have their defense die roll negatively modified. See 10.3, 10.4, and 10.5.

10.2 COMBAT VALUES

Printed on the surface, submarine, and air units are numbers that represent their movement and combat capabilities. These values are described below:

Movement Allowance: The maximum number of hexes a unit can move during its active status.

Defense Value: A measure of a unit's ability to withstand damage. Air units do not possess a Defense value.

SSM Value: A quantification of a unit's SSM capability. A unit is also given an SSM Range, which is the distance in hexes it can be from its target in order to conduct SSM Combat (do not count the hex occupied by the attacking unit). An SSM attack must take the most direct route to the target (that is, it cannot zigzag to the target).

ASW Value: A quantification of a unit's ASW capability.

Anti-Air Value: A quantification of a unit's anti-aircraft capability. An air unit has a single Anti-Air value; a surface unit has two Anti-Air values (Close Anti-Air value and Area Anti-Air value).

Special Value: A quantification of a unit's capabilities in a kind of warfare unique to its type. Air units have a Bombing value. Surface combat units have a Close Combat value (used as an optional rule in the Advanced Game; see 24.9). Amphibious assault (AA) units have an Amphibious Assault value (used in the Advanced Game; see 18.2). Submarine units have a Torpedo value.

In addition to the values listed above, some units possess special symbols to indicate unique characteristics: "noisy" Soviet submarines (affecting detection attempts on the Submarine Detection Table; see 9.2); "all-weather" air units (see 16.1); and air units with a limited SSM capability (used in the Advanced Game; see 20.4). See Case 2.3 for an explanation of these symbols.

Interceptor and Attack Air Units: Interceptor (INT) and Attack (ATK) air units have special restrictions regarding the use of their combat values. Depending on the whim of the owning player, these units can reverse their roles in an Action Phase. Before activating an INT or ATK unit, the owning player must indicate which role, INT or ATK, the unit will perform when active. The decision has the following effects:

- An air unit used as an Interceptor (INT) always has Bombing and SSM values of 0, but it employs its printed Anti-Air value.
- An air unit used as an Attack (ATK) unit always employs its printed Bombing and SSM values, but it has an Anti-Air value of 1.

Special NATO Restriction: NATO air units of different nationalities can activate from any friendly airfield. However, in every Action Phase, a maximum of two non-Norwegian INT or ATK air units can initiate Bombing or SSM Combat when activating from a Norwegian airfield.

10.3 TORPEDO COMBAT

Torpedo Combat can be done under these circumstances:

1. The attacking unit is an active submarine;
2. The force being attacked must be a detected enemy surface unit or stack;
3. The attacking submarine must be adjacent to the target unit;
4. The attacking submarine can attack only one hex, even if it is adjacent to several enemy-occupied hexes.

NOTABLE EXCEPTIONS: A surface unit in a base hex cannot be attacked by Torpedo Combat. A surface unit cannot be attacked if it is separated from the attacking submarine by a full land hexside. A submarine cannot perform Torpedo combat if it occupies a fiord hex.

Resolving Torpedo Combat: Follow the procedure outlined below to resolve Torpedo Combat.

PREPARING FOR ATTACK

1. The attacker determines the Torpedo value of the attacking submarine.
2. The attacker can choose *one or two* surface units in the hex as targets, making this declaration aloud. A surface unit can be a target a maximum of once per Torpedo Combat.
3. The attacker can split up his Torpedo value in any way he desires. He tells the defender how many points of the Torpedo value will be applied against each target. If only one unit is the target of the attack, the complete value is applied against it.

DEFENSE DIE ROLL

4. The defender selects up to *five* units in the target hex (including submarines, if any) and adds their ASW values together.
5. The defender rolls the die and consults the Combat Results Table, cross-referencing the result in the "Defense" column with the "Combat Value" column corresponding to the ASW value calculated in step 4. The following die roll modifiers are applied at this time.

- If at least one (not necessarily both) of the targets chosen in step 2 belongs to a Task Force, the defender adds 2 to his Defensive die roll.
- If *all* targets chosen in step 2 do not belong to a Task Force or Task Group, the defender subtracts 1 from his Defensive die roll.
- If the target chosen in step 2 is the *only* surface unit in the hex, the defender subtracts 3 from his Defensive die roll.

Note: The last two die roll modifiers are *not* cumulative. A unit alone in a hex subtracts 3 from the Defensive die roll, not 4.

A result from 0 to 11 will be found. This is the Defense modifier and should be noted for later use.

NOTABLE EXCEPTION: If all units in the target hex have ASW values of "N," no Defense die roll takes place. Skip steps 4 and 5 of this procedure.

RESOLVING ATTACKS

6. The attacker states a target unit and the number of points from the Torpedo value applied against it as declared in step 3. He rolls the die and subtracts the Defense modifier calculated in step 5 from the roll. (Note that this modifier is applicable to every die roll made by the attacker during the Torpedo Combat, not just to the first attack.) The following modifiers are applied to the die roll:

- If the attacker wishes, he can add from 1 to 3 to the die roll for Tactical Coordination air units in that zone (see 7.4).
- If the target units occupy a fiord hex, 3 is subtracted from this roll.

The attacker cross-references the modified die roll in the "Attack" column with the "Combat Value" column corresponding to the number of points applied to the attack. The combat result will be a number from 0 to 11.

7. The combat result is compared with the Defense value of the target unit. Damage or destruction of a unit is applied immediately (see 11.0).

Note: The attacker performs steps 6 and 7 for each target declared in step 2.

8. After all targets declared in step 2 have been attacked, the Torpedo Combat is over. If necessary, a Local Detection marker is placed on the submarine (see 9.2).

3	SO	N
6		
VFGNR		22
6	SN	N

● TORPEDO VALUE

■ DEFENSE VALUE
◆ ASW VALUE

4	US	N
9		
RSVLT		N
5	CV	6 0

4	US	8
2		
KNOX		10
4	FF	4 0

4	US	8
5		
RDGRS		16
8	DD	6 0

Example of Torpedo Combat: The Soviet SN VFgnr (Torpedo Value: 22) uses Torpedo Combat against a detected US stack in a fiord hex consisting of Rsvlt (Defense Value: 9; ASW Value: 5), Knox (Defense: 2; ASW: 4), and Rdgrs (Defense: 4; ASW: 8). None of the US units are part of a Group. VFgnr selects Rsvlt and Knox as targets, allocating 1 point against Knox and 21 against Rsvlt ($1+21=22$, the Torpedo value of VFgnr).

The NATO player adds up the ASW values of his three units (17) and rolls the die, obtaining a 4. Since none of the ships belongs to a Task Group or Force, 1 is subtracted from this roll, yielding a 3. Cross-referencing 3 in the Defense column with the "15 to 20" Combat Value column, a Defense modifier of 3 is obtained.

VFgnr now attacks Knox with 1 point. The Soviet player rolls a 2. The Defense modifier of 3 and 3 more for the fiord hex causes 6 to be subtracted from the roll, yielding a -4. Cross-referencing -4 in the Attack column with the "1 to 2" Combat Value column yields a result of 0. Thus, Knox is not damaged.

Rsvlt is now attacked with 21 points. The Soviet player rolls a 7, which is modified to 1 due to the Defense modifier (-3) and the fiord (-3). Before rolling the die, however, the Soviet player announced that he would add two Tactical Coordination air units to the attack (+1 each), yielding a final modified roll of 3. Cross-referencing 3 in the Attack column with the "21 to 27" Combat Value column produces a final result of 3. Rsvlt suffers no damage and the combat is over.

10.4 SURFACE-TO-SURFACE MISSILE (SSM) COMBAT

SSM Combat can be performed under these circumstances:

1. The initiating force is an active surface, submarine, or air unit (or stack of surface or air units);
2. The target of the attack is a detected enemy surface unit (or stack) or airfield/port hex in the Intermediate and Advanced Games (see 14.0);
3. The target of the attack must be within the SSM Range (in hexes) of the attacking unit;
4. Submarine and surface units cannot occupy a fiord hex when attacking, nor can they conduct an attack across a full land hexside or through a fiord hex. (Enemy units occupying fiord hexes can be attacked.) Air units are exempt from these restrictions.
5. The unit (or stack) performing SSM Combat can attack targets in one hex only. If a stack of units performs SSM Combat, not all the units within the stack need participate in the SSM attack.

Note: An SSM attack must follow the most direct route to its target. It cannot zigzag or take a circuitous route in its flight path to the target.

Positioning of Defending Units: Immediately before SSM Combat is resolved, the defending player can adjust the positions of his units within the defending stack in any way he wishes. Units in different Groups must remain separate from each other and from other units in the same hex. Once SSM Combat begins, the defending player can no longer reposition his units.

Resolving SSM Combat: The SSM Combat procedure is outlined below:

PREPARING FOR ATTACK

1. The attacker determines the combined SSM value of all units participating in the attack and announces the hex he will attack.
2. The defender can reposition the surface units in the target hex.
3. The attacker can choose *any or all* surface units in the hex as targets. He must tell the defender which units will be targets.
4. The attacker splits up the SSM value in any way he sees fit and tells the defender how many SSM points will be directed against each target. If there is only one target, the entire SSM value is applied against it. A given target can be attacked only once per SSM Combat, but it can be attacked several times by different enemy active units in the same Action Segment.

DEFENSE DIE ROLL

5. The defender combines the Anti-Air values of his units as follows:

A. Add together the Area Anti-Air value of *all* units in the hex;

NOTABLE EXCEPTION: *If the defender occupies a fiord hex, skip the above step.*

B. Add together the Close Anti-Air values of all surface units that are targets of the SSM attack (as determined in step 3);

C. Add the Close Anti-Air values of the units stacked directly beneath the target units;

NOTABLE EXCEPTIONS: *If a unit beneath another target unit is also a target, do not add in its Close Anti-Air value. A unit's Close Anti-Air value can be added in only once per SSM Combat. A unit at the bottom of the stack obviously has no other unit beneath it. If there are several Groups in a hex, they cannot assist each other as outlined in step 3C.*

D. If there is a CAP mission in the target hex, add 2 to the total for *each* US F14 air unit in the mission; otherwise, add 1 for *each* additional non-F14 INT air unit in the CAP mission.

E. Add in the Area Anti-Air values of any friendly surface units in hexes the SSM attack passed through on its way to the target hex. This addition can happen only if the SSM attack was initiated at a range of greater than one hex and if the path of hexes from the attacking unit transits a hex occupied by enemy surface units.

6. The defender combines the values from step 5. He rolls the die and consults the Combat Results Table, cross-referencing the die roll in the "Defense" column with the "Combat Value" column corresponding to the combined sum from step 5. The following die roll modifiers are applied:

- If at least one (not necessarily all) of the targets chosen in step 3 belongs to a Task Force, the defender adds 2 to his Defense die roll.
- If *all* targets chosen in step 3 do not belong to a Task Group or Task Force, the defender subtracts 1 from his Defense die roll.
- If the target chosen in step 3 is the *only* surface unit in the hex, the defender subtracts 3 from his Defense die roll.

Note: The last two die roll modifiers are *not* cumulative.

The resulting number found is the Defense modifier and is applied to each SSM attack in step 7. It should be noted for future use.

RESOLVING ATTACKS

7. The attacker now resolves his SSM attacks one at a time (as declared in step 4). For each attack, he rolls the die and immediately subtracts the Defense modifier from the result. (This

modifier is subtracted from every Attack die roll made during the combat, not just the first one.) He consults the Combat Results Table, cross-referencing the modified die roll in the "Attack" column with the "Combat Value" column corresponding to the number of points from the SSM value applied to the attack. The combat result will be a number from 0 to 11.

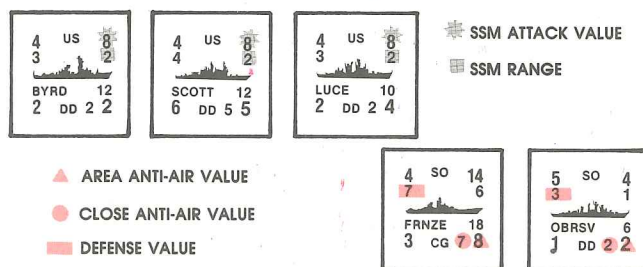
8. There are three possible modifiers to the attacker's step 7 die roll (in addition to the Defense modifier):

- The attacker can add from 1 to 3 to his die roll for Tactical Coordination air units in this zone (see 7.4).
- If the target units occupy a fiord hex, 3 is subtracted from the attacker's die roll.
- If, at the moment an SSM attack is initiated, there are no surface units owned by the attacker in a hex adjacent to the target hex, 2 is subtracted from the attacker's die rolls. *Any* friendly surface unit can be used to satisfy this requirement, even those initiating SSM Combat against another hex.

NOTABLE EXCEPTION: *In an SSM attack against an airfield or port hex, 4 is subtracted from the attacker's die roll, regardless of the presence of friendly surface units in an adjacent hex; see 14.0.*

9. Compare the result from the Combat Results Table with the Defense value of the target unit. Damage or sinking is immediately inflicted (see 11.0).

10. The attacker performs steps 7, 8, and 9 once for each target declared in step 3. After all targets declared in step 3 have been attacked, the SSM Combat is over. If necessary, a Local Detection marker is placed on the attacking unit(s); see 9.2.



Example of SSM Combat: The US DD's Byrd, Scott, and Luce (each SSM Attack Value: 8; SSM Range: 2) are situated two hexes away from a detected Soviet Task Group consisting of the CG Frnze (Area Anti-Air: 8; Close Anti-Air: 7; Defense Value: 7) and the DD Obrsv (Area Anti-Air: 2; Close Anti-Air: 2; Defense: 3). The US player declares an SSM attack against this stack.

The combined SSM value of the US units is 24; the NATO player decides to attack Frnze with 21 points and Obrsv with 3 (21+3=24, the combined US SSM value). The combined Area Anti-Air value of the Soviet units is 10, and the Close Anti-Air value is 9. Thus, the Soviet player's combined value in Defense combat is 19. (Note that, since both Soviet units are targets, their Close Anti-Air values are simply added together. There are no non-target units stacked beneath these two units, so there is no enhancement of their Close Anti-Air values.) The Soviet player rolls the die and gets a 2. Cross-referencing this result on the Defense column with the "15 to 20" Combat Value column gives a Defense modifier of 2.

The NATO player now attacks Frnze with 21 points. He rolls the die and gets a 9. The Defense modifier of 2 is immediately subtracted from the die result, and an additional 2 is subtracted because no NATO surface unit is adjacent to the Soviet units. The final die result is 5 (9-2-2=5). Cross-referencing 5 on the Attack column with the "21 to 27" Combat Value column yields a result of 4. Frnze is therefore damaged (see 11.0).

Obrsv is now attacked with 3 points. The NATO player rolls the die and gets a 1. Subtracting 4 from the die roll (for the Defense modifier and because there are no NATO surface units adjacent to the Soviet stack) yields a -3. Cross-referencing -3 in the Attack column with the "3 to 5" Combat Value column produces a result of 0. Obrsv is undamaged, and the SSM Combat is now over.

10.5 BOMBING COMBAT

Bombing combat can be done under these circumstances:

1. The initiating force is an active air unit or stack;
2. The target of the attack is a detected enemy surface unit (or stack) or airfield/port hex (in the Intermediate and Advanced Game; see 14.0);
3. The attacking air unit must be in the same hex as the target unit (or stack) or airfield/port hex;
4. The attacking unit or stack can initiate Bombing Combat against one hex only. It cannot split its Bombing value to attack different hexes. If a stack of units initiates Bombing Combat, not all units in the stack need participate.

Once the air unit or stack has completed its Bombing Combat, it must continue moving to a friendly airfield or back to its parent carrier. If it does not have the Movement Allowance to do so, it is destroyed.

Positioning Defending Units: Immediately before Bombing Combat is resolved, the defender can adjust the positions of his units within the defending stack in any way he wishes. Units in different Groups must remain separate from one another and from other units in the hex. Once Bombing Combat begins, the defender can no longer reposition his units.

Resolving Bombing Combat: The Bombing Combat procedure is outlined below:

PREPARING FOR ATTACK

1. The attacker determines the combined Bombing value of all units participating in the attack and announces the hex he will attack.
2. The defender can reposition his units in the target hex.
3. The attacker can choose *any* or *all* surface units in a hex as targets. He must tell the defender which units will be targets.
4. The attacker splits up the Bombing value in any way he sees fit and tells the defender how many Bombing points will be directed against each target. If there is only one target, the whole Bombing value is applied against it. A given target can be attacked only once per Bombing Combat.

DEFENSE DIE ROLL

5. The defender combines the Anti-Air values of his units as follows:

A. Add together the Area Anti-Air value of *all* units in the hex;

NOTABLE EXCEPTION: *If the defender's units occupy a fiord, skip the above step.*

B. Add together the Close Anti-Air values of all surface units that are the targets of the Bombing attack (as determined in step 3);

C. Add the Close Anti-Air values of the units stacked directly beneath the target units;

NOTABLE EXCEPTIONS: *If a unit beneath another target is also a target, do not add in its Close Anti-Air value. A unit's Close Anti-Air value can be added in only once per Bombing Combat. A unit at the bottom of the stack obviously has no other unit beneath it. Note that Groups in the same hex cannot assist each other in step C.*

D. Add in the Area Anti-Air values of any friendly surface units in hexes the air units passed through on their way to the target hex.

6. The defending player combines the values from step 5. He rolls the die and consults the Combat Results Table, cross-referencing the die roll in the "Defense" column with the "Combat Value" column corresponding to the combined-sum from step 5. The following modifiers are applied to the die roll:

- If at least one (not necessarily all) of the target units chosen in step 3 belongs to a Task Force, the defender adds 2 to his Defense die roll.
- If *all* targets chosen in step 3 do not belong to a Task Group or Task Force, the defender subtracts 1 from his Defense die roll.
- If the target chosen in step 3 is the *only* surface unit in the hex, the defender subtracts 3 from his Defense die roll.

Note: The last two die roll modifiers are *not* cumulative.

The resulting number is the Defense modifier and is applied to each Bombing attack in step 7. It should be noted down for later use. Also, this number may damage the attacking air units:

- If the number is between 0 and 4 (inclusive), the attacking air units are unaffected.
- If the number is between 5 and 8 (inclusive), one air unit of the owning player's choice within the attacking stack is immediately damaged. (Flip it over to its damaged side). It is not mandatory that the damaged unit be one actually participating in the attack, but it must be in the stack of attacking units.
- If the number is 9 or more, two air units of the owning player's choice within the attacking stack are immediately damaged. If only one air unit is attacking, it is destroyed.

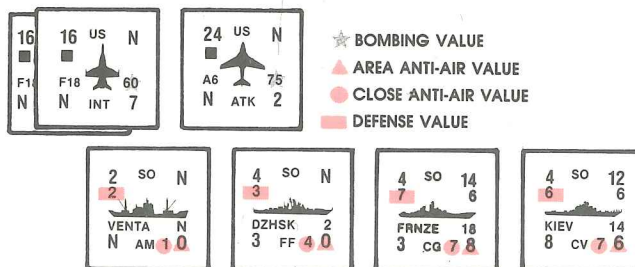
RESOLVING ATTACKS

7. The attacker now resolves the Bombing attacks he declared in step 4 one at a time. For each attack, he rolls the die and subtracts the Defense modifier from the result. He consults the Combat Results Table, cross-referencing the modified die roll in the "Attack" column with the "Combat Value" column corresponding to the number of points from the Bombing value applied to the attack. (The attacker can add from 1 to 3 to his die roll for Tactical Coordination air units in this zone; see 7.4.) The result will be a number from 0 to 11.

NOTABLE EXCEPTION: *If an attacking unit is damaged due to the Defense die roll in step 6, the attacker must adjust the number of points allocated against each target in step 4 to reflect his Bombing value reduction. The attacker can reallocate the surviving Bombing points in any way he sees fit as long as only the same units he declared in step 3 are chosen as targets again (he must attack the same number of units he declared). If the units damaged in step 6 are not participating in the attack, no adjustment is necessary.*

8. Compare the result from the Combat Results Table with the Defense value of the target unit. Damage or sinking is immediately inflicted (see 11.0).

9. The attacker performs steps 7 and 8 for each target declared in step 3. After all targets declared in step 3 have been attacked, the Bombing Combat is over.



Example of Bombing Combat: A stack of three US air units consisting of two F18's (each Bombing Value: 60) and one A6 (Bombing: 75) initiates Bombing Combat against a detected Soviet Task Force consisting of (from top to bottom): AM Venta (Area Anti-Air Value: 0; Close Anti-Air Value: 1; Defense Value: 2), FF Dzhsk (Area Anti-Air: 0; Close Anti-Air: 4; Defense: 3), CG Frnze (Area Anti-Air: 8; Close Anti-Air: 7; Defense: 7) and CV

Kiev (Area Anti-Air: 6; Close Anti-Air: 7; Defense: 6). The combined Bombing value of the US units is 195. The NATO player states he will attack Venta with 90 points and Kiev with 105 ($90+105=195$, the combined US Bombing value).

The combined Area Anti-Air value of the Soviet force is 14. The Close Anti-Air value of Venta (1) is augmented by Dzhsk's Close Anti-Air value (4), since Dzhsk is stacked directly beneath a target. Kiev does not receive any augmentation to its Close Anti-Air value because it is at the bottom of the stack. The combined Anti-Air value of the Soviet stack is 26 ($8+6+1+4+7=26$). The Soviet player rolls the die and gets a 9; he adds 2 to this result because at least one target is in a Task Force, for a modified die roll result of 11. He cross-references the 11 in the Defense column with the "21 to 27" Combat Value column. The result is 7. Immediately, one US air unit must be damaged.

The NATO player selects an F18 and flips it over, revealing a new Bombing value of 30. He must now reallocate the Bombing points against the targets. He decides to continue to attack Venta with 90 points, but he reduces the attack on Kiev from 105 to 75 (a reduction of 30).

In the attack on Venta, the NATO player rolls the die and gets a 3. The Defense modifier of 7 is subtracted, yielding -4. Cross-referencing -3 in the Attack column with the "90 or more" Combat Value column gives a result of 2. Venta is sunk (see 11.0). In the attack on Kiev, the NATO player rolls the die and gets a 0. Subtracting the Defense modifier of 7 from this roll yields a modified result of -7. Cross-referencing -7 in the Attack column with the "72 to 89" Combat Value column gives a result of 0. Kiev is undamaged and the combat is over.

10.6 ANTI-SUBMARINE WARFARE (ASW) COMBAT

ASW Combat can be performed under these circumstances:

1. The initiating force is an active surface, submarine, or air unit (or stack of air or surface units);
2. The target of the attack is a detected submarine unit. The submarine can occupy a fiord or base hex;
3. An attacking surface unit (or stack) or submarine must be in a hex that is *adjacent* to the target submarine. The attacking unit cannot occupy a fiord hex nor can it be separated from the target by a land hexside;
4. An attacking air unit (or stack) must be in the same hex as the target submarine;
5. A unit performing ASW Combat can attack one hex at a time;
6. A submarine can be attacked only once by ASW Combat in the enemy player's *surface* Action Segment and once in the enemy player's *air* Action Segment. Once attacked by surface or air units, it cannot be attacked again in that segment. However, it can be attacked an unlimited number of times in the enemy player's *submarine* Action Segment.

Resolving ASW Combat: The ASW Combat procedure is outlined below:

PREPARING FOR ATTACK

1. The attacking player can select up to five active surface units, four active air units, or a single active submarine unit to attack. He determines the combined ASW value of the units participating in the attack.
2. The attacking player can choose only *one* detected submarine in a hex as his target. The target is the only submarine that can be affected by the combat.

DEFENSE DIE ROLL

There is *no* Defense die roll in ASW Combat.

RESOLVING ATTACKS

3. The attacker resolves the ASW Combat by rolling the die and consulting the Combat Results Table, cross-referencing the

die roll in the "Attack" column with the "Combat Value" column corresponding to the attacker's combined ASW value (step 1). The attacker can add from 1 to 3 to his die roll for Tactical Coordination air units in his zone (see 7.4). The result will be a number from 0 to 11.

4. Compare the result from the Combat Results Table with the Defense value of the target unit. Damage or sinking is immediately inflicted (see 11.0). The combat is over. If necessary, a Local Detection marker is placed on the attacking unit(s); see 9.2.

3	US	18
7		5
NPNWS		
9	SN	N

ASW VALUE

1	SO	N
6		
MGNIT		
3	SS	N

DEFENSE VALUE

Example of ASW Combat: The US SN NpNws (ASW Value: 9) initiates an ASW attack against the detected Soviet SS Mgnit (Defense: 6). The NATO player has three air units on Tactical Coordination in this zone, which are allocated to aid this attack. The NATO player rolls the die and obtains a 9. Three is added due to the air units, giving a modified result of 12. Cross-referencing 12 in the Attack column with the "9 to 14" Combat Value column gives a result of 6. Mgnit is sunk (see 11.0) and the combat is over. The three air units are placed in one of the Return to Base boxes on the Strategic Air Display.

10.7 AIR-TO-AIR COMBAT

Air-to-Air Combat is performed between opposing air units and is resolved on the Air-to-Air Combat Results Table. Air-to-Air Combat can occur at three times during a Game Turn:

Interception Segment: In this segment, which occurs only in the Strategic Air Phase, Air-to-Air Combat must take place between opposing air units on Interception missions in the same zone (see 7.2). To determine who is the attacker, roll the die once for each zone in which combat occurs. On an even die roll (including "0"), the NATO player is the attacker; on an odd die roll, the Soviet player is the attacker.

Bounce Segment: This segment occurs immediately after the Interception Segment. In this segment, surviving units on Interception missions can initiate combat against *all* enemy air units in the same zone that are on non-Interception missions — Reconnaissance, Tactical Coordination, and Mining (if that optional rule is being used; see 23.0). To perform this combat, the Interception player rolls the die and consults the "Bounce" column of the Air-to-Air Combat Results Table (no combat ratio is calculated). The Interception player is considered the attacker. In a Bounce Segment, a maximum of one "Bounce" combat can be performed per player in each zone, regardless of the number of surviving air units on Interception missions a player has in that zone.

Action Phase: CAP air units can interrupt the movement of enemy air units that move within range to initiate Air-to-Air Combat (see 8.2). CAP units are always considered the attackers.

Resolving Air-to-Air Combat: The Air-to-Air Combat procedure is outlined below:

1. Combine the Anti-Air values of the attacker's air units. No units can be withheld.
2. Combine the Anti-Air values of all the defender's air units. No units can be withheld.
3. Compare the step 1 sum with the step 2 sum and express this as a ratio: attacker's Anti-Air value to defender's Anti-Air value. Round this ratio *down* in favor of the defender to con-

form to one of the simplified ratio columns on the Air-to-Air Combat Results Table. Note that there are two rows of ratios listed on the table. The "Interception" row is used in Air-to-Air Combat that takes place during the Interception Segment. The "CAP" row is used during combat initiated by CAP units. The "Bounce" column is used in the Bounce Segment.

4. The attacker rolls the die and cross-references the result with the ratio column (or "Bounce" column) determined in step 3. The combat result is divided by a slash. Results to the *left* of the slash are applied to the attacker; results to the *right* of the slash are applied to the defender. Each result will have a number, and some results also have an "r."

5. Numbered combat results indicate the number of "steps" of damage suffered by the affected player's air units. For each step of damage, one air unit is damaged (flipped over; see 11.0); an air unit that does not possess a reverse side is destroyed when it suffers one step loss. An air unit that is already damaged is destroyed when it suffers a second step loss. Air units with a front and reverse side are destroyed if they take two step losses. The owning player always applies damage to his units. He can split up his loss in any way he sees fit among those units that took part in the combat.

6. If the combat result contains an "r," the affected player's air units must "Return to Base." If the result has no "r," they are allowed to continue their mission (see below).

NOTABLE EXCEPTION: If no INT unit (or an ATK unit acting as an INT unit) is present with enemy air units being attacked by a CAP mission, the CAP mission ignores all step losses and "r" results in the Air-to-Air Combat result.

7. After combat results have been applied, the Air-to-Air Combat is over.

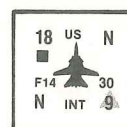
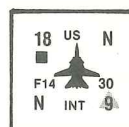
Returning to Base: An "r" result on the Air-to-Air Combat Results Table means that the air unit or stack must "Return to Base." This result can have several meanings, depending on when the combat took place.

- **Interception Segment:** Air units on Interception missions in the zone in which the combat is taking place that must return to base are placed in one of the "Return to Base" boxes in the zone they occupy on the Strategic Air Display. Place the unit in the box corresponding to the zone in which it began, with the top of the counter pointing to the initials of the correct zone.
- **Bounce Segment:** An "r" results applies to *all* of the defender's air units on non-Interception missions in the zone in which the combat is taking place. Remove the affected air units from their Reconnaissance, Tactical Coordination, and Mining boxes and place them in one of the "Return to Base" boxes in the zone they occupy.
- **Action Phase:** CAP units that receive an "r" result are placed in their "Return to Base" box on the CAP Display. An active unit or stack whose movement was interrupted by a CAP mission and which receives an "r" result must immediately be returned to the airfield or carrier from which it began, assuming the unit has expended half its Movement Allowance or less (see 8.4).

Air units occupying a "Return to Base" box can perform no functions for the remainder of the Game Turn.

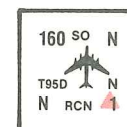
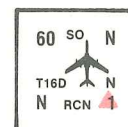
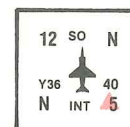
Continuing a Mission: Results on the Air-to-Air Combat Results Table that do not have an "r" mean that the air units can continue their mission. What the unit can do depends on when the combat occurred.

- **Interception/Bounce Segments:** The units remain on their assigned Strategic Air Missions.
- **Action Phase:** CAP units remain where they are and can initiate Air-to-Air Combat again. Units whose movement was interrupted by CAP units can continue their movement from the point where they were interrupted. These units cannot be attacked in Air-to-Air Combat by the same CAP marker for the duration of the current Action Segment.



▲ ANTI-AIR VALUE

▲ ANTI-AIR VALUE



Example of Air-to-Air Combat: The NATO player has two F14 units (each Anti-Air Value: 9) in the Interception box of the Iceland Zone. In the Iceland Zone of his display, the Soviet player has a Y36 unit (Anti-Air: 5) based on Kiev also on an Interception mission. He also has a T16D on a Reconnaissance mission and a T95D on a Tactical Coordination mission in the Iceland Zone.

During the Interception Segment, Air-to-Air Combat must take place between the F14's and the Y36. A 3 is rolled, indicating that the Soviet player is the attacker. The ratio is 5-to-18, or 1-4. The Soviet player rolls the die and obtains a 5. Cross-referencing this roll with the "1-4" ratio column of the "Interception" line on the Air-to-Air Combat Results Table, a "1r/0" result is obtained. The F14's suffer no loss and remain on Interception. The Y36 loses one step and must return to base. It is flipped over and placed in the "Return to Base" box corresponding to the zone currently occupied by Kiev.

In the Bounce Segment, the NATO player can attack the two Soviet air units on non-Interception mission in the Iceland Zone. No ratio is calculated; the NATO player simply rolls the die and consults the "Bounce" column of the Air-to-Air Combat Results Table. Assume the NATO player rolls a 9. Thus, a result of "0/3r" is obtained. The NATO player suffers no loss, but the Soviet T16D and T95F units must suffer three step losses between them (the Soviet player decides how) and must be placed in one of the "Return to Base" boxes in the Iceland Zone. When the Bounce Segment ends, the F14's are placed in a "Return to Base" box.

10.8 COMBAT AND BASE HEXES

Base hexes can only be attacked in Intermediate and Advanced Scenarios (see 14.0). In Basic Scenarios, surface units occupying base hexes do *not* benefit from the bases' Close Anti-Air values when attacked by SSM or Bombing Combat.

11.0 Damage

"A critical study of bourgeois military theory by military cadres of the socialist state is dictated by the the objective necessity of knowing the enemy, his actual strength and capabilities, and his plans to utilize his forces in war."

— A. S. Mlovidov

Damage may occur to units in combat. Units always begin the game on their undamaged (front) sides. Damage causes a unit to be flipped to its reverse side, indicated with a starburst. A damaged unit has a lower Movement Allowance and decreased combat values. Note that CR units and some RCN air units do not have a damaged side; these units are destroyed if they suffer a damage result or a single step loss in combat.

11.1 HOW DAMAGE OCCURS

Numbered combat results obtained due to attacks are compared with the Defense value of the surface or submarine target unit. There are three possible results:

- **No Effect:** If the combat result number is *less than one-half* the target unit's Defense value, the attack is unsuccessful and the target is unaffected.

- **Damage:** If the combat result number is *equal to or greater than one-half* the target unit's Defense value, but less than the full Defense value, the target is damaged (see 11.2).
- **Sunk (Destroyed):** If the combat result number is *equal to or greater than* the target unit's Defense value, the target unit is sunk or destroyed (that is, eliminated).

Note that damage to air units occurs in "steps," with each step being equal to a single air unit being damaged (see 10.7).

11.2 EFFECTS OF DAMAGE

When a unit is damaged, it is flipped to its starburst side. If a damaged unit receives another damage result, it is sunk or destroyed and is removed from the map. A damaged unit cannot be repaired.

Example of Damage: The US CV Rsvlt (Defense Value: 9) suffers a combat result of 5 in an attack. Because this number is greater than one-half Rsvlt's Defense value, the CV is damaged (flipped over). If Rsvlt suffers another combat result of 5 or more, it would be sunk.

11.3 AIR UNIT DAMAGE IN BOMBING COMBAT

Air units participating in Bombing Combat can be damaged or destroyed as a result of defensive combat undertaken by the surface units that are being attacked (see 10.5).

12.0 Special Units

"It appears to me to be the province of our Infant Navy to surprise and spread alarm with our fast sailing ships. When we grow stronger, we can meet their fleets and dispute with them the sovereignty of the ocean."

— Captain John Paul Jones

12.1 AIRCRAFT CARRIERS

Aircraft carriers (CV) are mobile airfields from which air units operate as the carrier moves. Air units are assigned to a carrier at the beginning of a game and must remain with that carrier. Air units beginning the game on an airfield or different carrier cannot be assigned to a carrier.

Deployment of Air Units: Air units assigned to a carrier are not deployed on the map. Each player has Aircraft Carrier Displays on the map, and his carrier-based air units are normally kept on this display. The air units are always considered to occupy the same hex as their parent carrier.

Air units on a carrier can be activated separately or in stacks of up to four units. If an aircraft carrier is damaged, its air units suffer the following restrictions:

1. A maximum of two of its units can be assigned to CAP.
2. A maximum of one of its units can be assigned to a Strategic Air Mission.
3. A maximum of two of its units can become active during the air Action Segment (they can be activated together or individually).

If an aircraft carrier is destroyed, all its air units are destroyed. (Units on CAP or Strategic Air Missions are destroyed in the CAP Landing Phase or Strategic Air Mission Termination Phase, respectively.)

12.2 AIRBORNE EARLY WARNING (AEW) AIR UNITS

When assigned to a CAP mission by an aircraft carrier, AEW



units enhance the capabilities of that CAP mission in Air-to-Air Combat (see 8.2). AEW units do not enhance the capabilities of CAP units in airfield hexes. A maximum of one AEW unit can be assigned to a CAP mission. When an AEW unit is on a CAP mission, use the "CAP & AEW" side of the CAP marker.

The Soviet *Helix* (HLX) and UK *Sea King* (SKG) AEW units are not as effective as the US E2 AEW unit. If a HLX or SKG is in a carrier's CAP mission, it modifies the Anti-Air values of the air units on that mission at a *four* hex range by $\frac{1}{4}$, not $\frac{1}{2}$. (See the Aircraft Carrier CAP Chart on the map.)

12.3 ELECTRONIC WARFARE (EW) AIR UNITS

When activated with friendly air units, EW units enhance the capabilities of those units in Air-to-Air, Bombing, and SSM Combat.

Restrictions on EW Air Units: EW units cannot perform CAP or Strategic Air Missions. Only one EW unit can be activated as part of a stack of air units.

Attacks by CAP Missions: If an EW unit is stacked with air units attacked by an enemy CAP mission, its presence reduces by *two* the combined Anti-Air value of the enemy CAP mission. If the CAP mission is assigned to a carrier, this reduction takes place *before* any further modifications are applied due to the Aircraft Carrier CAP Chart.

Bombing and SSM Combat: If an EW unit is part of an active stack of air units executing Bombing or SSM Combat against enemy surface units, the Area Anti-Air value of *each* enemy surface unit within the target hex is reduced by one (but never below 0) for the combat.

In Intermediate and Advanced Scenarios, if an EW unit is part of a stack of active air units executing Bombing or SSM Combat against an enemy airfield or port, the Close Anti-Air value of the airfield/port is reduced by *one* for the combat (see 14.1).



13.0 Introductory Scenarios

"Russian policy is a riddle wrapped in a mystery inside an enigma; but perhaps there is a key. That key is the Russian national interest."

— Winston Churchill

It is recommended that the players try the following scenarios in order to become familiar with the Basic Rules. Each of the scenarios can be played in a short time and require only a handful of units. Once the players become familiar with the Basic Game system, they should go on to the Intermediate Scenarios (see 15.0). In the Introductory Scenarios, all Game Turns are considered day. Also, all drift ice hexes are considered sea hexes. Do not use any Optional Rules in the Introductory Scenarios.

Note that in the set up of units, instructions are given as to whether units must be together in specific hexes or if they can be placed in different hexes.

13.1 SCENARIO 1: Standing Naval Force Atlantic

BACKGROUND: While shadowing the Soviet heavy cruiser *Kirov* in the Mediterranean, a US Navy destroyer has been rammed and sunk with heavy loss of life. In Washington, the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff has laid the blame for this incident squarely on Soviet shoulders and has asked the President to demand a Soviet apology and appropriate reparations. Meanwhile, the Soviet Politburo has accused the US Navy's 6th Fleet of dangerous violations of international maritime law and has labeled the incident as "tragic but unavoidable." Both sides have placed their naval forces on full alert.

In the Norwegian Sea, a US Navy Amphibious Ready Group (ARG) has just off-loaded a battalion landing team of US Marines in northern Norway as part of NATO's *Ocean Venture* summer maneuvers. This ARG consists of the helicopter carrier *Iwo Jima* (LPH-2), the assault transports *Austin* (LPD-4) and *Ogden* (LPD-5), and a single escorting frigate, USS *Hawes* (FFG-53). Shortly after receiving news of the Mediterranean incident, *Iwo Jima* was strafed by two Su-27 *Flankers* operating out of bases on the Kola Peninsula. The Commander-in-Chief, Atlantic (CINCLANT) has ordered the ARG to leave the Marines ashore and to steam southwards at all possible speed to a safe Norwegian or British port. Intelligence gathering by P-3C *Orion* sorties over the Norwegian Sea has indicated that the powerful Soviet cruiser *Frunze* (sister to *Kirov*) and the new destroyer *Ottuk* are situated in the vicinity of Jan Mayen island; it is reported that these two warships will shortly sail at high speed to Murmansk in view of the current crisis. It has also been reported that the two ships have been ordered to destroy NATO shipping in northern Norwegian waters during their passage back to Soviet territory because of the *Stavka*'s fears of a surprise NATO amphibious assault against the Kola Peninsula.

CINCLANT, who also doubles as NATO's Supreme Allied Commander, Atlantic (SACLANT), has directed the multinational task force Standing Naval Force Atlantic to move into the Norwegian Sea at high speed. This force, which is currently on maneuvers in the North Sea, consists of the US destroyer *Luce* (DDG-38), the Royal Navy frigate *Active* (F-171), the Dutch frigate *Piet Hein* (F-811), the West German destroyer *Molders* (D-186), and the Canadian frigate *Ottawa* (DDE-229). The task force has been ordered to prevent the passage of *Frunze* and *Ottuk* to Murmansk and to protect the US ARG from Soviet attack. Supporting this operation from its airfield at Andoya in northern Norway is 333 Squadron of the *Kongelige Norske Luftforsvaret* (Royal Norwegian Air Force), consisting of a handful of P-3B *Orion* maritime reconnaissance aircraft.

MAP

Use only the north map. Units are not allowed to exit the map.

DEPLOYMENT

NATO (set up first)

Together in any sea hex within 6 hexes of Trondheim (3721)

Luce (US/DD)
Moldr (WG/DD)
Active (UK/FF)
PHein (NE/FF)
Ottwa (CA/FF)

2906

Hawes (US/FF)
Ijima (US/AA)
Ogden (US/AA)
Austn (US/AA)

3313: ANDOYA

P3 (NO/RCN)

Soviet (set up second)

Together in any sea or drift ice hex within 6 hexes of Jan Mayen (2119)

Frnze (CG)
Ottuk (DD)

3806: KILPYAVR

T16D (RCN)

SPECIAL RULES

1. Air units can be assigned only to strategic missions; they cannot activate. Thus, there can only be surface Action Segments, never any submarine or air Action Segments.

2. Units occupying a port hex can neither attack nor be attacked.

GAME LENGTH

6 Game Turns

VICTORY CONDITIONS

The Soviet player receives Victory Points (VP) for the following accomplishments:

CONDITION	VICTORY POINTS
For each NATO FF or DD sunk	1
Ogden or Austn sunk	2 each
Ijima sunk	4
Ottuk ends game in Soviet port	3
Frnze ends game in Soviet port	7

Note: Soviet airfield/port combinations count as ports.

At the end of the game, the Soviet player adds up the number of VP he gained and consults the following chart to determine the winner:

SOVIET VP	VICTORY LEVEL
14 or more	Decisive Soviet Victory
12-13	Substantive Soviet Victory
10-11	Marginal Soviet Victory
8-9	Marginal NATO Victory
6-7	Substantive NATO Victory
5 or less	Decisive NATO Victory

13.2 SCENARIO 2: Sink the Boomers!

BACKGROUND: Warsaw Pact forces have launched a surprise offensive against West Germany. NATO ground troops have been caught unprepared and a catastrophe for Western arms appears inevitable. No nuclear weapons have been used of yet by either side, but the President of the United States has stated that nuclear retaliation by the United States will take place should Warsaw Pact forces cross the Rhine. A day after the President's warning, no de-escalation of the Warsaw Pact offensive has become apparent; a report from the front has indicated that the Soviet 5th Guards Motor Rifle Division will reach the Rhine at Wiesbaden within a day or two.

Against the advice of the Joint Chiefs of Staff, the President has ordered preparatory steps for a retaliatory nuclear strike against

a key Soviet military base. The deployment of US Navy ballistic missile subs (SSBN's) has been stepped up, while attack submarines have been ordered to prevent the passage of Soviet "boomers" into the Atlantic. As a direct warning to Moscow that a nuclear attack is a real possibility, the President has ordered US Navy attack submarines to hunt down and destroy a handful of Soviet SSBN's currently on station in the Barents Sea. The JCS has warned the President that this step will be considered highly escalatory by Moscow, but the President has insisted that it is the last preventative measure at his disposal that will save western Europe from Soviet occupation.

The submarine chief of the Red Banner Northern Fleet has gathered intelligence of increased NATO ASW activities in the Barents Sea. Suspecting these moves as the preparation for a campaign against his SSBN's, he has called many of his boomers back to port. However, in order to disperse Soviet nuclear strike assets in the event of a surprise US attack on the Kola Peninsula, the commander has ordered three SSBN's to operate under the Arctic ice pack for the next six weeks. Should they reach the ice, detection and eventual destruction by NATO ASW forces will become extremely unlikely. These three submarines are *Ukraina*, a new Typhoon boat of some 30,000 tons; *Donskaya*, a Delta-3; and *Karelskaya*, a Delta-1. Running interference for the SSBN's in their passage to the ice are three attack submarines: *Pyotr Pospelov*, a 40-knot Alfa; *Anatoly Blagonravov*, a Victor-3; and *Magnitogorskiy*, an elderly diesel-powered Foxtrot.

Only two US Navy attack submarines are currently on station in the Barents Sea and in a suitable position to intercept this Soviet movement. These two boats, *Newport News* (SSN-750) and *La Jolla* (SSN-701), are currently situated near Svalbard. Supporting this operation is 333 Squadron of P3-B *Orions* from the *Kongelige Norske Luftforsvaret* (Royal Norwegian Air Force).

MAP

Use only the north map. Units are not allowed to exit the map.

DEPLOYMENT

Soviet (set up first)

Any sea or drift ice hexes within 4 hexes of Pechenga (3605), but not stacked with any other unit

KrIsk (SB)

Dnsky (SB)

Ukrna (SB)

Any sea or drift ice hexes in the Barents Sea Zone, but not stacked with any other unit

Mgnit (SS)

PPslv (SN)

ABlgn (SN)

3806: KILPYAVR

T95F (RCN)

3605: PECHENGA

I38 (RCN)

NATO (set up second)

Any sea or drift ice hexes within 4 hexes of Longyearbyen (2106), but not stacked with any other unit

NpNws (US/SN)

LaJla (US/SN)

3313: ANDOYA

P3 (NO/RCN)

SPECIAL RULES

1. No submarine can enter a fiord or base hex for the duration of the scenario.
2. Only Soviet SB units can enter a pack ice hex. Upon doing so, they are immediately removed from the game and the Soviet player gains Victory Points.
3. Since there are no surface units in the scenario, neither player can have a surface unit Action Segment during the Action Phase.

GAME LENGTH

9 Game Turns

VICTORY CONDITIONS

The Soviet player receives Victory Points (VP) for the following accomplishments:

CONDITION	VICTORY POINTS
For each US SN sunk	1
KrIsk or Dnsky reaches pack ice	4 each
Ukrna reaches pack ice	5

At the end of the game, the Soviet player adds up his VP and consults the following chart to determine the winner:

SOVIET VP	VICTORY LEVEL
15	Decisive Soviet Victory
13-14	Substantive Soviet Victory
10-12	Marginal Soviet Victory
8-9	Marginal NATO Victory
6-7	Substantive NATO Victory
5 or less	Decisive NATO Victory

13.3 SCENARIO 3:

Into the Jaws of the Backfire

BACKGROUND: The Soviet 45th and 54th Motor Rifle Divisions have crossed the Norwegian-Soviet border near Pechenga. Although intelligence is sketchy, it is reported that two Norwegian infantry battalions from Brigade North are engaged in combat with their Soviet foes. The objective of the Soviet offensive is still not clear: It is possible that the attack will be purposefully contained within the border area in order to seek only limited goals; on the other hand, it could be the first stage of a major offensive designed to seize Norwegian ports and airfields on the Atlantic coast.

NATO's SACLANT has ordered limited reinforcement of the Norwegian Nordkapp (North Cape) area. The British 1st Battalion, Parachute Regiment and the Italian Susa Alpini Battalion have been airlifted to the bleak Banak airfield, 240 miles north of the Arctic Circle. In addition, the US Navy ARG 6-88, which had been en route for the Mediterranean, has been ordered to alter its course and land its Marine contingent, the 22nd Marine Amphibious Unit (MAU), in northern Norway. ARG 6-88 consists of the assault ship *Belleau Wood* (LHA-3), the helicopter carrier *Iwo Jima* (LPH-2), and the transport *Ogden* (LPD-5). This force, which had been sailing unescorted, is currently situated near Jan Mayen island.

In Britain, 3 Commando Brigade has been hastily placed onboard ship for deployment to Norway. This brigade consists of 42 and 45 Commandos, Royal Marines, carried in the North Sea ferries *Elk* and *Norland*; the 1st Combat Group, Royal Netherlands Marine Corps, carried in the Royal Navy's *Intrepid* (L-11); and 29 Commando Regiment, Royal Artillery, carried in the landing ships *Sir Bedivere* (L-3004), *Sir Lancelot* (L-3029), and *Sir Tristram* (L-3505).

The Royal Navy's Flag Officer, 1st Flotilla, has been handed the responsibility of protecting all NATO shipping being directed to Norway, including the US Navy's ARG. An ad hoc battle group has been formed, consisting of the aircraft carriers *Invincible* (R-05) and *Illustrious* (R-06); the destroyers *Liverpool* (D-92), *York* (D-104), *Glasgow* (D-88), and *Bristol* (D-23); and the frigates *London* (F-95), *Boxer* (F-92), *Active* (F-171), *Arrow* (F-173), and *Andromeda* (F-57). Carried onboard the carriers are 800 and 801 Squadrons, consisting of *Sea Harrier* FRS.1 VSTOL fighters.

Satellite reconnaissance of the Kola Peninsula has spotted about 20 T-26 *Backfires* and 25 T-16C *Badger* attack aircraft, plus a large force of supporting fighter and electronic warfare assets. It is fully expected that these air forces will contest the movement of NATO's amphibious forces to Norway.

MAP

Use only the north map. Units are not allowed to exit the map.

DEPLOYMENT

Soviet (set up first)

3806: KILPYAVR

M23 (INT)

M25 (INT)

T26 (ATK)

T16C (ATK)

T16E (EW)

NATO (set up second)

Any sea or drift ice hexes in the Norwegian Sea or Greenland Sea Zones (they can stack with AA units, but they do not have to set up together)

Iltrs (UK/CV)

Invcl (UK/CV)

Lvrpl (UK/DD)

York (UK/DD)

Glsgrw (UK/DD)

Brstl (UK/DD)

Active (UK/FF)

Lndon (UK/FF)

Boxer (UK/FF)

Arrow (UK/FF)

Andrm (UK/FF)

On Iltrs

HAR (UK/INT)

SKG (UK/AEW)

On Invcl

HAR (UK/INT)

SKG (UK/AEW)

3120

Intpd (UK/AA)

Elk (UK/AA)

Nrlnd (UK/AA)

SLnct (UK/AA)

STris (UK/AA)

SBdvr (UK/AA)

2314

BWood (US/AA)

Ijima (US/AA)

Ogden (US/AA)

(Amphibious Assault value of 4) reaches Banak, the NATO player would receive 8 VP ($4 \times 2 = 8$).

DESTINATION HEX	AMPHIBIOUS ASSAULT VALUE MULTIPLE
-----------------	---

Tromso (3311) $\times 1$ Banak (3308) $\times 2$ Gamvik (3406) $\times 3$

Note: Amphibious Assault values, which are also printed on the AA units, are as follows:

AMPHIBIOUS
ASSAULT
VALUE

UNITS

8 BWood, Ijima

4 Ogden, Elk, Intpd, Nrlnd

2 SLnct, STris, SBdvr

At the end of the game, the NATO player adds up his VP and consults the following chart to determine the winner:

NATO VP	VICTORY LEVEL
---------	---------------

94 or more NATO Decisive Victory

70-93 NATO Substantive Victory

46-69 NATO Marginal Victory

30-45 Soviet Marginal Victory

20-29 Soviet Substantive Victory

19 or less Soviet Decisive Victory

13.4 SCENARIO 4: Damn the Torpedos!

BACKGROUND: The diplomatic situation in central Europe is critical. NATO has been aware of a massive Warsaw Pact military buildup in East Germany and Czechoslovakia for the past two weeks and has demanded that it be halted. The Soviets have ignored this warning and the troop buildup is continuing unabated. In response, NATO has begun to reinforce central Europe on a large scale. US forces from the continental United States (CONUS) have been moved by air to West Germany where they have armed themselves with pre-positioned heavy equipment, maintained in Germany for use in just such an emergency. Also, large amounts of ammunition and supplies have been readied in American and Canadian ports for eventual movement to Europe by sea.

The Soviet Union has warned NATO that such a large-scale reinforcement of West Germany will be viewed as an act of war. The Politburo has declared that any significant movement of troops and supplies to Europe will be prevented by Soviet naval and air forces. NATO intelligence has learned that there are currently only six Soviet submarines in the Greenland-Iceland-UK (GIUK) gap area that are in a suitable position to attack NATO shipping. These submarines are: *Pyotr Pospelov*, a 40-knot Alfa; *Leninskiy*, a new Sierra design; *Vera Figner* and *Ivan Konev*, both Victor-3's; *Mikhail Tukhachevsky*, a Tango; and *Magnitorgorskiy*, a Foxtrot.

There are currently 13 American cargo ships and tankers in the North Atlantic. These vessels are formed into three convoys: a slow grouping of eight ships is currently situated about 250 miles south of Iceland; a fast convoy of three vessels is located about 400 miles to the west; and a small convoy of two superfast SL-7 container ships, capable of 33 knots, is situated about 250 miles south of Cape Farewell, Greenland's southernmost tip. The US Navy has hastily deployed a handful of escorts to protect the convoys during their perilous journeys. Four Spruance-class destroyers, *John Rodgers* (DD-983), *Moosbrugger* (DD-980), *Spruance* (DD-963), and *Conolly* (DD-979), form the backbone of this force; in addition, six frigates have been made available: *Hawes* (FFG-53), *Reuben James* (FFG-57), *Gary* (FFG-51), *Bagley* (FF-1069), *Knox* (FF-1052), and *Richard L. Page* (FFG-5). A small detachment of P-3C *Orions* from Patrol Squadron 10, stationed at Brunswick, Maine, has been deployed to the airfield at Keflavik in order to support the convoys.

The Royal Navy's Flag Officer, Scotland and Northern Ireland, has managed to scrape together four warships to support the con-

SPECIAL RULES

1. At the moment a NATO surface unit enters a fiord hex (including fiords that are ports and airfields), it is removed from play. The NATO player may receive VP for these units (see "Victory Conditions").
2. All NATO units are automatically detected throughout the game.
3. No air units can be placed on Strategic Air Missions in this scenario.
4. In all CAP Phases, all available UK air units *must* be placed on CAP missions.
5. Since there are no submarine units in the game, neither player has a submarine Action Segment. Also, the Soviet player has the air Action Segment only.
6. Since there are no Soviet surface units in the game, all Soviet SSM attacks executed by air units must be penalized by subtracting two from the attack die roll (because no friendly surface unit is adjacent to the target hex; see 10.4).

GAME LENGTH

7 Game Turns

VICTORY CONDITIONS

The NATO player loses Victory Points (VP) as follows:

CONDITION	VICTORY POINTS
Each NATO CV sunk	-2
Each NATO FF or DD sunk	-1
Each NATO air unit destroyed	0

The NATO player gains VP for each NATO AA unit that reaches the hexes listed below. The unit's Amphibious Assault value is enhanced by the Amphibious Assault value multiple for the hex it enters, and the result is the number of VP gained by the NATO player. For example, if the US AA *Ogden*

voys during their approach to the British Isles. These ships are the destroyers *Birmingham* (DD-86) and *Glasgow* (DD-88) and the frigates *Norfolk* (F-101, a new "Type 23") and *Boxer* (F-92).

MAP

Use only the south map. Units are not allowed to exit the map.

DEPLOYMENT

NATO (set up first)

Any sea hexes in the Labrador Sea or North Atlantic Zones (they can stack with CR's, and they do not have to set up together)	2535
Spnce (US/DD)	Buyer (US/CR)
Rdgrs (US/DD)	Bay (US/CR)
Cnoly (US/DD)	TClDo (US/CR)
Msbgr (US/DD)	Eagle (US/CR)
Page (US/FF)	TClba (US/CR)
James (US/FF)	Baugh (US/CR)
Hawes (US/FF)	Lumus (US/CR)
Bgley (US/FF)	Hauge (US/CR)
Gary (US/FF)	1637
Knox (US/FF)	Kocak (US/CR)
	Mteor (US/CR)
	Cgnus (US/CR)

Together in any sea or coastal hex within 3 hexes of Holy Loch/Faslane (3736)	0642
Glsqw (UK/DD)	Altar (US/CR)
Brnmhm (UK/DD)	Pllux (US/CR)
Nrflk (UK/FF)	1831: KEFLAVIK
Boxer (UK/FF)	P3 (US/RCN)

Soviet (set up second)

Any hexes adjacent to Vago (2930) or Keflavik (1831), but not stacked with any other unit

PPslv (SN)
IKnev (SN)
Lnsky (SN)
VFgnr (SN)
Mgnit (SS)
MTsky (SS)

SPECIAL RULES

1. The US P3 unit must perform either a Tactical Coordination or a Reconnaissance strategic mission. It cannot activate. As a result, each player has only one Action Segment per Action Phase: surface for the NATO player and submarine for the Soviet player.
2. NATO CR units are sunk if they suffer a damage result.
3. As soon as a NATO unit (including surface combat units) enters Holy Loch/Faslane, Reykjavik, or Bergen, it is removed from the map. The NATO player receives Victory Points (VP) for this accomplishment (see "Victory Conditions").
4. Soviet submarines can attack NATO units occupying base hexes by Torpedo Combat (but not NATO units removed from the map; see 3 above). Such combat is resolved normally.

GAME LENGTH

10 Game Turns

VICTORY CONDITIONS

The NATO player gains and loses Victory Points as follows:

CONDITION	VICTORY POINTS
Each CR that reaches Bergen (3926)	+6
Each CR that reaches Holy Loch/Faslane (3726)	+4
Each CR that reaches Reykjavik (1830)	+3
Each NATO FF or DD sunk	-1

At the end of the game, the NATO player adds up his VP and consults the following chart to determine the winner:

NATO VP	VICTORY LEVEL
55 or more	NATO Decisive Victory
46-54	NATO Substantive Victory
36-45	NATO Marginal Victory
29-35	Soviet Marginal Victory
22-28	Soviet Substantive Victory
21 or less	Soviet Decisive Victory

13.5 SCENARIO 5: The Big Stick

BACKGROUND: The recent Soviet invasion of Norway has stagnated due to fierce resistance of the Norwegian Brigade North and the rapid deployment of supporting NATO forces to the Nordkapp area. NATO intelligence has learned that the Soviets will shortly attempt to break the stalemate by dropping the 76th Guards Airborne Division on critical Norwegian airfields, such as Bodo and Banak, while marines and commandos from the 34th Naval Infantry Regiment land simultaneously on the Norwegian coast behind NATO lines. In addition, it is expected that the Soviets will attempt to land engineers on Spitsbergen in order to seize and lengthen the runway of the Longyearbyen landing strip.

The US Navy's 2nd Fleet has been directed to divert a strong aircraft carrier battle group to the Norwegian Sea to thwart these Soviet moves. This force, labeled Task Force 20.1, has been ordered to clear the Norwegian Sea of Soviet shipping and to prevent the landing of Soviet amphibious forces on the Norwegian coast. Task Group 20.1 consists of the new carrier *Theodore Roosevelt* (CVN-71), plus the escorts *South Carolina* (CGN-37), *Vincennes* (CG-49), *Spruance* (DD-963), *Luce* (DDG-38), *Moosbrugger* (DD-980), and *Reuben James* (FFG-57). Deployed onboard *Roosevelt* is Carrier Air Wing 15, consisting of two F-14 *Tomcat* squadrons (VF-51 "Screaming Eagles" and VF-111 "Sundowners"), two F-18 *Hornet* squadrons (VA-27 "Royal Maces" and VA-97 "Warhawks"), one A-6 *Intruder* squadron (VA-52 "Knightriders"), and one EA-6 *Prowler* squadron (VAQ-134 "Garudas").

Norwegian P-3B *Orion* reconnaissance flights have reported to the task group that a significant Soviet naval force has put to sea, including the aircraft carriers *Kiev* and *Baku*, as well as the nuclear-powered cruiser *Frunze* — one of the most powerfully armed warships in the world. It also appears that about eight cargo and troop transport vessels are accompanying the task force, escorted by a handful of destroyers.

MAP

Use only the north map. Units are not allowed to exit the map.

DEPLOYMENT**NATO (set up first)****2119: JAN MAYEN**

Rsvlt	(US/CV)	On Rsvlt
Vncns	(US/CG)	F14 (US/INT) × 2
SClna	(US/CG)	F18 (US/INT) × 2
Spnce	(US/DD)	A6 (US/ATK)
Luce	(US/DD)	EA6 (US/ATK)
Msbgr	(US/DD)	
James	(US/FF)	

Soviet (set up second)

Any sea or drift ice hex or hexes
in the Barents Sea Zone (can be
split up and be stacked with AA
or CR units)

Kiev	(CV)	On Baku
Baku	(CV)	Y36 (INT)
Tula	(CG)	3210
Frnze	(CG)	Cshky (AA)
Kursk	(CG)	Obsky (AA)
Ottuk	(DD)	Krsky (AA)
Obrsv	(DD)	Pchor (AA)
Sprnv	(DD)	Beloy (AA)
Udloy	(DD)	2901
On Kiev		Yauza (CR)
Y36	(INT)	Ldnev (CR)
		Irbit (CR)

SPECIAL RULES

1. All units of both sides are detected throughout the scenario.
2. Neither player can allocate air units to strategic missions.
3. Since neither player has submarines, each player has only two Actions Segments per Action Phase: one for surface units and the other for air units.
4. The US A6 and F18 units can each make one SSM attack per game. The F18's SSM Range/Attack Value is 1/30 (1/15 if the unit is damaged); the A6's SSM Range/Attack Value is 2/40 (2/20 if the unit is damaged). When one of these air units

makes its SSM attack, the NATO player should record this fact on a piece of paper.

5. Soviet AA and CR units are permitted to end their movement in NATO base hexes. If they do so, they are removed from the game and the Soviet player may receive Victory Points, even if the AA units are damaged. Also, if a Soviet AA unit ends its movement in Lofoten (3315), it is removed from the map and the Soviet player receives Victory Points. (See "Victory Conditions.")

6. No surface units can enter a fiord hex for the duration of the game (except Soviet CR/AA units entering NATO bases in fiord hexes; see 5, above).

7. Soviet CR units are sunk if they receive a damage result.

GAME LENGTH

6 Game Turns

VICTORY CONDITIONS

The Soviet player gains and loses Victory Points (VP) as follows:

CONDITION	VICTORY POINTS
US CV Rsvlt sunk	+12
Each US CG sunk	+5
Each AA unit that reaches Bodo (3516)	+4
Each CR unit that reaches Longyearbyen (2106)	+4
Each AA unit that reaches Lofoten (3315)	+3
Each US DD sunk	+2
Each US FF sunk	+1
Each US air unit destroyed	+1
Each AA unit that reaches Andoya (3313)	+1
Each Soviet CV or CG sunk	-1

At the end of the game, the Soviet player adds up his VP and consults the following chart to determine the winner:

SOVIET VP	VICTORY LEVEL
25 or more	Soviet Decisive Victory
20-24	Soviet Substantive Victory
15-19	Soviet Marginal Victory
10-14	NATO Marginal Victory
4-9	NATO Substantive Victory
3 or less	NATO Decisive Victory

Intermediate Game Rules

14.0 Airfields and Ports

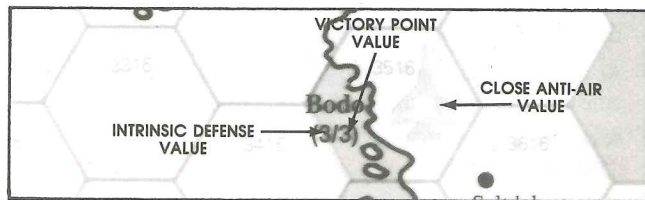
"There is a rank due to the United States among nations, which will be withheld, if not absolutely lost, by the reputation of weakness. If we desire to avoid insult, we must be able to repel it; if we desire to secure peace, one of the most powerful instruments of our rising prosperity, it must be known that we are at all times ready for war."

— President George Washington

In Intermediate and Advanced Scenarios, *airfields* can be attacked by SSM and Bombing Combat. In Advanced Scenarios using the Logistics option (see 20.0), *ports* can be attacked by SSM and Bombing Combat. Landing strips can never be attacked. If a player attacks a hex containing a port/airfield combination, he must specify whether he is attacking the port or the airfield.

14.1 ATTACKING AIRFIELDS AND PORTS

An attack on an airfield or port cannot be combined with attacks on surface units occupying that base hex. An attack on an airfield or port is separate and distinct from all other attacks. An airfield or port can be attacked an unlimited number of times by different active forces in a given Action Segment.



Close Anti-Air Value: Each base hex has a Close Anti-Air value printed in its hex (in addition to its Intrinsic Defense value; see 18.5). When attacked by SSM or Bombing Combat, the Close Anti-Air value is used by the base in its defensive combat calculation. Surface units stacked in a port or airfield hex at the moment of combat cannot contribute their Area or Close Anti-Air values to the port/airfield that is being attacked. However, CAP units in an airfield hex can contribute to the port/airfield's defense in SSM (never Bombing) Combat.

The following modifiers are applied to an airfield's Close Anti-Air value in SSM Combat:

- For *each* US F14 unit in a CAP mission over the airfield, add 2 to the Close Anti-Air value.
- For *each* non-F14 INT unit in a CAP mission over the airfield, add 1 to the Close Anti-Air value.
- When an EW air unit is part of an attacking stack executing Bombing or SSM Combat, subtract 1 from the Close Anti-Air value.

A base can contribute its Close Anti-Air value to surface units occupying that hex which are the targets of SSM or Bombing Combat. Add the base's Close Anti-Air value to the targets' Close Anti-Air values in defensive combat.

Resolving Attacks on Airfield and Ports: Airfields and ports are always detected (although units in the airfields/ports must be detected in order to be attacked). Bombing Combat against airfields or ports is resolved normally. However, in SSM Combat against an airfield or port, the attacker must subtract *four* from his attack die roll in addition to the normal subtraction

for the defense modifier. (Modifiers for fiords and for the lack of friendly surface units in a hex adjacent to the target hex are ignored; see 10.4.) When a combat result of 5 or more is achieved by a Bombing or SSM attack on a port or airfield, the target airfield/port is damaged or destroyed as per the instructions of the following chart:

COMBAT RESULT	EFFECT
4 or less	None
5-6	Damage 1
7-9	Damage 2
10-11	Destroyed

If an airfield or port is damaged, place a Damage marker of the appropriate type (1 or 2) in the hex. If an airfield or port is destroyed, place a Destroyed ("Destroy") marker in the hex. Damage is cumulative. If a port or airfield at Damage 1 receives another Damage 1 result, flip the marker over to its Damage 2 side. Any port or airfield reaching a cumulative damage level above Damage 2 is destroyed.

Note: In hexes with a port/airfield combination, Damage markers affect only the port *or* airfield that was specified as the target of an attack. Players may wish to make a note of whether a Damage marker applies to the port or the airfield in such a hex.

Effects of Damage: Air units are not affected by a Damage 1 or Damage 2 result, but they are unable to activate, initiate Strategic Air Missions, or perform CAP from a damaged airfield. Air units already on a strategic mission when their airfield is damaged continue their mission; they can return to any friendly airfield except a destroyed one within the zone in which they began the mission (damaged or not), subject to stacking restrictions (see 6.2). Air units on CAP when their airfield is damaged remain on their CAP mission and take no damage; they *must* return to the damaged airfield in the CAP Landing Phase.

The Close Anti-Air value of a damaged airfield is still functional. A damaged port cannot be used for in-port replenishment (see 20.0).

Effects of Destruction: Air units occupying a destroyed airfield are eliminated from play, including all units on CAP in the hex. CAP units are eliminated during the CAP Landing Phase. The elimination of these units counts for Victory Point purposes in the Advanced Game (see 28.5). Air units on Strategic Air Missions when their airfield is destroyed continue their missions; they can return to any friendly airfield, except a destroyed airfield, within the zone in which they began their mission. Air units that cannot return to an airfield are eliminated in the Strategic Air Mission Termination Phase and count for Victory Points purposes.

A destroyed airfield is not functional for the remainder of the game. A destroyed port cannot be used for in-port replenishment (see 20.0). A destroyed port or airfield cannot be attacked again; its Close Anti-Air value is no longer functional.

Tactical Coordination: An attacker can use Tactical Coordination (see 7.4) to enhance attacks against airfields and ports.

14.2 REPAIR

Damaged airfields and ports can be repaired. In the Repair Phase of the Terminal Cycle (which occurs in Night Game Turns only), all Damage 1 markers are removed from the map; all Damage 2 markers are reduced to Damage 1. Destroyed ports and airfields cannot be repaired.

15.0 Intermediate Scenarios

"As long as capitalism and socialism exist, we cannot live in peace; in the end, one or the other will triumph — a funeral dirge will be sung over the Soviet Republic or over world capitalism."

— V. I. Lenin

Intermediate Scenarios are similar to the Introductory Scenarios, but they take slightly longer to play and use more units. As with the Introductory Scenarios, all Game Turns in Intermediate Scenarios are day. All drift ice hexes are considered sea.

15.1 SCENARIO 6: Into the Norwegian Sea

BACKGROUND: Prior to its planned attack on Norway, the Soviet *Stavka* has ordered the Red Banner Northern Fleet to sortie from its bases in the Kola Peninsula to clear the Norwegian Sea of NATO warships. Following this operation, the Soviet fleet has been directed to prevent the reinforcement of Norway by interdicting NATO shipping lanes. Six attack submarines will participate in the initial sweep down the Norwegian coast, including *Pyotr Pospelov*, a 40-knot Alfa, and *Volga*, a 14,000-ton Oscar. In addition, a strong surface battle group has been formed at Murmansk to support this operation. This force includes *Kiev*, a VSTOL aircraft carrier, and *Frunze*, a 28,000 ton nuclear cruiser of the *Kirov* class. A large force of Soviet naval aircraft has also been ordered to support the operation from airfields within the Kola. Included in this force is a full regiment of T-16C *Badger* strike aircraft, a squadron of MiG-23 *Flogger* interceptors, and a squadron of Su-27 *Flanker* fighter-bombers.

The Soviet offensive has come as a complete surprise to NATO naval forces. Only a small Norwegian standing naval force, consisting of a handful of *Hauk*-class patrol boats, two frigates, and a single submarine will be able to contest the Soviets initially. SACLANT is moving three nuclear attack submarines to the area with orders to initiate ASW operations against Soviet submarines. These boats are: USS *La Jolla* (SSN-701), USS *Olympia* (SSN-717), and HMS *Trafalgar* (S-107). A Royal Navy flotilla is also hastily sailing northwards to block the Soviet movement. This force consists of the aircraft carrier *Illustrious* (R-06, carrying 800 Squadron of Sea Harrier FRS.1 fighters), *Birmingham* (D-86), *Glasgow* (D-88), *Arrow* (F-173), *Boxer* (F-92), *Battleaxe* (F-89), *Minerva* (F-45), and *Andromeda* (F-57). A detachment of RAF *Nimrod* maritime reconnaissance aircraft from 201 Squadron at RAF Kinloss has been deployed to Norway to support the operation. Also, 333 Squadron of the Royal Norwegian Air Force is currently operating several P-3B *Orions* from airfields in northern Norway. Norwegian F-16 fighters from 331 and 338 Squadrons have been ordered to fly continuous patrols over north Norway to protect NATO shipping and to engage Soviet aircraft attempting to attack the critical Norwegian airfields.

MAP

Use only the north map. Units are not allowed to exit the map.

SPECIAL RULES

1. The UK HAR unit can make one SSM attack in the game. It has an SSM Range/Attack Value of 2/40 (2/20 if the unit is damaged).
2. The US SN *Olypa* can make one cruise missile (CM) SSM attack in the game. A CM attack is considered normal SSM combat, but it can be used only against an enemy airfield. The airfield's Close Anti-Air value and CAP (if any) are taken into account in defensive combat against a CM attack, but the attacker does *not* subtract 4 from his attack die roll as he normally would in an SSM attack against a port or airfield (see 14.1). Unlike normal SSM attacks, a cruise missile attack can transit full land hexsides on the way to the target. The SSM Range/Attack Value of a CM attack is 25/60 (25/40 if *Olypa* is damaged).

DEPLOYMENT

NATO (set up first)

Any sea or drift ice hexes within 3 hexes of Bjornoya (2708); they can be set up in the same hex

Olypa (US/SN)
LaJla (US/SN)
Tflgr (UK/SN)

Together in any sea hex within 3 hexes of Trondheim (3721)

Iltrs (UK/CV)
Brmhm (UK/DD)
Glsgr (UK/DD)
Arrow (UK/FF)
Boxer (UK/FF)
Btaxe (UK/FF)
Mnrva (UK/FF)
Andrm (UK/FF)

On Iltrs

HAR (UK/INT)
SKG (UK/AEW)

Any sea hex within 3 hexes of Tromso (3311)

Kaura (NO/SS)

3311: TROMSO

Bergn (NO/FF)
Stvgr (NO/FF)
PCS1 (NO/PC)
PCS2 (NO/PC)

Any airfields in Norway (they do not have to be in the same airfield)

F16 (NO/INT) × 2
P3 (NO/RCN) × 2
NIM (UK/RCN)

Soviet (set up second)

Any sea or drift ice hexes in Greenland Sea Zone, but not stacked with or adjacent to any NATO unit (they can stack together)

PPslv (SN)
Mgnit (SS)

Together in any sea hex within 2 hexes of Pechenga (3605)

FKzlv (SN)
VFgnr (SN)
MKaln (SN)

3705: POLYARNYY

Volga (SN)

3605: PECHENGA

T16D (RCN)
T95F (RCN)
I38 (RCN)

3805: MURMANSK

Kiev (CV)
Frnze (CG)
Tula (CG)
Svtpl (CG)
Nklyv (CG)
Otchy (DD)
Udloy (DD)
Mnshk (FF)
Grmkv (FF)

On Kiev

Y36 (INT)

3806: KILPYAVR

M23 (INT)
S27 (INT)
T16C (ATK) × 2
T16E (EW)

GAME LENGTH

6 Game Turns

VICTORY CONDITIONS

The Soviet player gains Victory Points (VP) as follows:

CONDITION	VICTORY POINTS
Each NATO SN sunk	5
UK CV <i>Iltrs</i> sunk	5
Each Norwegian SS sunk	4
Each NATO DD sunk	3
Each NATO FF sunk	2
Each NATO INT air unit destroyed	2
Each Norwegian PC sunk	1
Each Destroyed combat result achieved against a NATO airfield	9
Each Damage 2 combat result achieved against a NATO airfield	6
Each Damage 1 combat result achieved against a NATO airfield	3
Each Soviet SS, SN, or Task Force (not Task Group) ending the game in the Norwegian Sea Zone	3

Note: Victory Points for damaging NATO airfields are awarded on the basis of the *actual* combat result, not on cumulative damage levels. For example, an airfield with a Damage 1 marker that receives another Damage 1 result has its marker adjusted to Damage 2, but the Soviet player receives only 3 VP for this new result (in addition to the 3 VP for the first Damage 1 result).

The Soviet player loses VP as follows:

CONDITION	VICTORY POINTS
Each Soviet CV or CG sunk	-2
Each Soviet FF, DD, SS, or SN sunk	-1
Each Soviet INT or ATK air unit destroyed	-1

15.2 SCENARIO 7: In Harm's Way

BACKGROUND: World War 3 has begun. American ground forces are currently in combat in Korea, central Europe, and the Middle East, and a ferocious naval battle is taking place in the Mediterranean. News from the fighting fronts is sketchy, although several false reports of Soviet nuclear missile launchings have triggered near-panics in American and western European cities.

NATO intelligence has reported that large numbers of Soviet SSBN's are putting to sea and are congregating in large "bastions" in the Barents Sea and the Sea of Okhotsk. These bastions are readily defensible by Soviet air, surface, and sub-surface forces; as a result, pinpointing and eventually destroying the SSBN's is a virtually impossible task for NATO ASW forces.

Upon being informed of the establishment of the Soviet bastions, Western political leaders have become seriously concerned about the possibility of a massive Soviet first strike against Europe and America. In an extremely controversial move, American military planners have convinced NATO political leaders to allow Western naval forces to attempt to penetrate the bastions in order to destroy as many Soviet SSBN's as possible. This plan has been loudly criticized for its escalatory effect on Soviet strategy: Could the penetration of the bastions imply to the Soviets that NATO is seeking a safe first-strike capability without fear of massive retaliation? Apart from the escalatory issue, many high-ranking NATO naval officers have questioned the wisdom of sending naval forces directly into the jaws of powerful Soviet land-based air power in areas so remote from friendly bases: Would not these forces be better employed in securing the Atlantic and Pacific sea lanes? Despite these objections, Western leaders have agreed to initiate an anti-SSBN campaign against the bastions.

While preparing for the operation, SACLANT has learned that five Soviet SSBN's have just recently departed ports in the Kola Peninsula. It appears that they are escorted by several attack submarines and a single surface action group, including the VSTOL carrier *Kiev*. More disturbing, however, is the report that two regiments of Soviet naval aircraft are being readied for operations at Kola airfields, including a squadron of T-26 *Backfires*.

For his initial penetration of the Barents Sea bastion, SACLANT has four highly effective ASW submarines at his disposal: HMS *Trafalgar* (S-107), USS *La Jolla* (SSN-701), USS *Newport News* (SSN-750), and USS *Pogy* (SSN-647). In addition, a powerful carrier battle group, consisting of the carrier *Theodore Roosevelt* (CVN-71), the cruisers *Virginia* (CGN-38) and *South Carolina* (CGN-37), and the destroyers *Conolly* (DD-979) and *Moosbrugger* (DD-980), has been ordered to support the operation. Also proceeding to the scene is the Standing Naval Force Atlantic, which has been directed to assist the US/British forces in hunting Soviet submarines. This force consists of the Dutch frigate *Witte de With* (F-813), the Canadian destroyer *Huron* (DDH-281), the West German destroyer *Molders* (D-186), the US frigate *Reuben James* (FFG-57), and the British frigate *Boxer* (F-92).

Carrier Air Wing 1, deployed onboard *Roosevelt*, is being prepared for action against Soviet aircraft operating from the Kola airfields. This wing consists of two F-14 *Tomcat* squadrons (VF-33 "Tarsiers" and VF-102 "Diamondbacks"), two F-18 *Hornet* squadrons (VA-46 "Clansmen" and VA-72 "Blue Hawks"), one A-6 *Intruder* squadron (VA-34 "Blue Blasters"), one EA-6 *Prowler*

At the end of the game, the Soviet player adds up his VP and consults the following chart to determine the winner:

SOVIET VP	VICTORY LEVEL
38 or more	Soviet Decisive Victory
33-37	Soviet Substantive Victory
27-32	Soviet Marginal Victory
21-26	NATO Marginal Victory
16-20	NATO Substantive Victory
15 or less	NATO Decisive Victory

squadron (VAQ-135 "Ravens"), one E-2C *Hawkeye* squadron (VAW-123 "Screw Tops"), and one S-3 *Viking* squadron (VS-32). In addition, two F-16 squadrons and one P-3B squadron of the Royal Norwegian Air Force are prepared to support SACLANT's operation from airfields in northern Norway.

MAP

Use only the north map. Units are not allowed to exit the map.

DEPLOYMENT

Soviet (set up first)

3605: MURMANSK	3505	3704
Klsky (SB)	Vlgda (SB)	Klmya (SB)
3705: POLYARNY	3604	
Dnsky (SB)	Krsk (SB)	

Any sea or drift ice hexes within 3 hexes of Bjornoya (2708), but not stacked with any other unit

Fkzlv (SN)
YGagr (SN)
Don (SN)
PPslv (SN)
Vldmr (SS)

Together in any sea or drift ice hex within 3 hexes of Pechenga (3605)

Kiev (CV)	On Kiev
Nkhmv (CG)	Y36 (INT)
Sprnv (DD)	
Udloy (DD)	
Grzin (FF)	

3905: KILDENSTROY

M23 (INT)
T16D (RCN)
T95F (RCN)
I38 (RCN)
B12 (RCN)

3806: KILPYAVR

T26 (ATK)
T16C (ATK)
M25 (INT)
S27 (INT)
T16E (EW)

NATO (set up second)

Any sea or drift ice hex in Barents Sea Zone, but not stacked with or adjacent to any Soviet unit

Tflgr (UK/SN)

Any sea or drift ice hexes within 8 hexes of Jan Mayen (2119), but not stacked with any other unit

Pogy (US/SN)
LaJla (US/SN)
NpNws (US/SN)

Together in any sea hex within 3 hexes of Andoya (3313)

Huron (CA/DD)
Moldr (WG/DD)
Boxer (UK/FF)
James (US/FF)
WdeWt (NE/FF)

Together in any sea or drift ice hex within 3 hexes of Jan Mayen (2119)

Rsvlt (US/CV)
Vrgna (US/CG)
SClna (US/CG)
Cnoly (US/DD)
Msbgr (US/DD)
On Rsvlt
F14 (US/INT) × 2
F18 (US/INT) × 2
A6 (US/ATK)
EA6 (US/EW)
S3 (US/RCN)
E2 (US/AEW)

Any airfields in Norway (do not have to be in same airfield)

F16 (NO/INT) × 2
P3 (NO/RCN) × 2
NIM (UK/RCN)

SPECIAL RULES

1. US F18, A6, and S3 air units can each make one SSM attack in the game. An F18 has an SSM Range/Attack Value of 1/30 (1/15 if the unit is damaged); the A6 and S3 have an SSM Range/Attack Value of 2/40 (2/20 if the unit is damaged).

2. The US CG *SCIna* can make one cruise missile (CM) SSM attack in the game. A CM attack is considered normal SSM Combat, but it can be used only against an enemy airfield. The airfield's Close Anti-Air value and CAP (if any) are taken into account in Defensive combat against a CM attack, but the attacker does *not* subtract 4 from his Attack die roll as he normally would in an SSM attack against a port or airfield (see 14.1). Unlike normal SSM attacks, cruise missile attacks can transit full land hexsides on the way to the target. The SSM Range/Attack Value of a CM attack is 25/60 (25/40 if *SCIna* is damaged).

GAME LENGTH

6 Game Turns

VICTORY CONDITIONS

The Soviet player gains and loses Victory Points (VP) as follows:

CONDITION	VICTORY POINTS
US CV <i>Rsvlt</i> sunk	+10
Each Soviet SB ending the game in the Svalbard Zone (even in ice pack hex)	+7
Each NATO CG or SN sunk	+3
Each NATO DD sunk	+2
Each NATO FF sunk or INT/ATK air unit destroyed	+1
Each Soviet CV or CG sunk	-2
Each Soviet DD, FF, SN, or SS sunk	-1
Each Soviet SB or air unit destroyed	0

At the end of the game, the Soviet player adds up his VP and consults the following chart to determine the winner:

SOVIET VP	VICTORY LEVEL
33 or more	Soviet Decisive Victory
26-32	Soviet Substantive Victory
20-25	Soviet Marginal Victory
14-19	NATO Marginal Victory
7-13	NATO Substantive Victory
6 or less	NATO Decisive Victory

15.3 SCENARIO 8: The Battle of the Gap

BACKGROUND: The Soviet invasion of Norway has been underway for two weeks. Soviet ground forces, paratroops, and marines have cleared the Norwegian coast as far south as Narvik; meanwhile, the Soviet Navy stands triumphant in the Norwegian Sea — not a single NATO warship is currently situated north of the Greenland-Iceland-UK gap. *Stavka* has determined that the time is ripe for launching a major interdiction effort against NATO's North Atlantic shipping lanes. The Red Banner Northern Fleet has been ordered to prevent the passage of NATO merchant ships from the United States and Canada to Europe. Submarines will be the main tools in this campaign, but major surface forces and long-range attack aircraft operating out of airfields on the Kola Peninsula will be readily available to support the submarines and to engage NATO surface forces if necessary.

NATO intelligence has reported to SACLANT that no less than 11 Soviet attack submarines are currently in position to launch this campaign. Over half these boats have already penetrated the GIUK gap and are currently shadowing American cargo vessels en route to Britain. Reports from *Nimrod* reconnaissance flights from the RAF's 206 Squadron, operating out of Stornoway in the Hebrides, have indicated that two major Soviet surface task forces are also preparing to transit the gap into the North Atlantic. One group includes the VSTOL carrier *Kiev* and the cruiser *Frunze*; the other group includes a second VSTOL carrier, *Baku*. It is also estimated that over 100 Soviet long-range attack and reconnaissance aircraft will support this campaign from the Kola Peninsula.

The situation in the North Atlantic is critical for NATO. There are currently three small convoys of American cargo ships and tankers en route to Britain, each of which is carrying significant quantities of ammunition and equipment for NATO ground forces. SACLANT has directed the US Navy's Commander-in-Chief, 2nd Fleet, and the Royal Navy's Flag Officer, 2nd Flotilla, to ensure the arrival of these convoys in Britain. The Royal Navy has been assigned the responsibility of securing the western approaches to the British Isles; the US Navy has assumed direct protection of the convoys.

US Navy forces consist of a carrier battle group, including the carrier *Theodore Roosevelt* (CVN-71, embarking Carrier Air Wing 1 — see Scenario 7 for a description of this wing), the cruiser *Virginia* (CGN-38), the destroyers *John Rodgers* (DD-983) and

Conolly (DD-979), and the frigate *Bagley* (FF-1069). A small convoy escort group, consisting of the frigates *Knox* (FF-1052), *Trippe* (FF-1075), and *Reuben James* (FFG-57), as well as the Standing Naval Force Atlantic, comprised of the USS *Moosbrugger* (DD-980), HMS *Scylla* (F-71), HMCS *Huron* (DDH-281), HNMS *Kortenaer* (F-807), and FGS *Molders* (D-186), have all been assigned to 2nd Fleet.

The Royal Navy's 2nd Flotilla consists of the aircraft carriers *Invincible* (R-05) and *Illustrious* (R-06), embarking 800 and 801 Squadrons of Sea Harriers and 706 Squadron (Sea King helicopters). Escorting vessels include *York* (D-104), *Birmingham* (D-86), *Broadsword* (F-88), *Minerva* (F-45), *Arrow* (F-173), *Andromeda* (F-57), and *Boxer* (F-92). In addition, several submarines have been assigned to 2nd Fleet: HMS *Trafalgar* (S-107), HMS *Conqueror* (S-48), HMS *Talent* (S-115), USS *Whale* (SSN-638), and USS *Olympia* (SSN-717).

NATO air units in the GIUK gap area are being briefed on the upcoming operation. The Royal Norwegian Air Force's 338 Squadron (F-16) will defend central Norwegian airfields against Soviet air attack. In Scotland, the RAF's 12 Squadron (*Buccaneers*) and 43 Squadron (*Tornados*) have been deployed to the Wick airfield. At Keflavik, the US Air Force's 612th Squadron (F-15 *Eagle*) and the Navy's Patrol Squadron 5 ("The Mad Foxes," P-3C *Orion*) are also at SACLANT's disposal.

MAP

Use both maps in this scenario.

SPECIAL RULES

1. UK HAR and US F18, A6, and S3 air units can each make one SSM attack in the game. The F18 has an SSM Range/Attack Value of 1/30 (1/15 if damaged); the HAR, A6, and S3 units have an SSM Range/Attack Value of 2/40 (2/20 if damaged).
2. NATO CR units are destroyed if they receive a damage result.
3. NATO CR units that reach Holy Loch/Faslane (3736) or Reykjavik (1830) are removed from the game. The NATO player receives Victory Points for this accomplishment.

GAME LENGTH

9 Game Turns

DEPLOYMENT**NATO (set up first)**

Any sea or drift ice hexes in British Isles or Iceland Zone (they can be in same hex)

Tflgr (UK/SN)
Olypa (UN/SN)

Any sea or drift ice hexes in Iceland, British Isles, North Atlantic, or Labrador Sea Zone (they can be in same hex)

Whale (US/SN)
Conqr (UK/SN)
Talnt (UK/SN)

3736: HOLY LOCH/FASLANE

Invl (UK/CV)
York (UK/DD)
Bdswd (UK/FF)
Mnrva (UK/FF)
Arrow (UK/FF)

On *Invl*

HAR (UK/INT)
SKG (UK/AEW)

Together in any sea hex within 3 hexes of Kirkwall (3531)

Iltrs (UK/CV)
Brmhm (UK/DD)
Andrm (UK/FF)
Boxer (UK/FF)

On *Iltrs*

HAR (UK/INT)
SKG (UK/AEW)

Together in any sea hex in Labrador Sea Zone (can stack with any other NATO units)

Rsvlt (US/CV)
Vrgna (US/CG)
Rdgrs (US/DD)
Cnoly (US/DD)
Bgley (US/FF)

On *Rsvlt*

F14 (US/INT) × 2
F18 (US/INT) × 2
A6 (US/ATK)
EA6 (US/EW)
S3 (US/RCN)
E2 (US/AEW)

Any sea hexes in Labrador Sea or North Atlantic Zone (can be in different hexes; can stack with other NATO units)

Knox (US/FF)
Tripe (US/FF)
James (US/FF)

2240

Buyer (US/CR)
Hauge (US/CR)
Baugh (US/CR)
TCLdo (US/CR)
Bay (US/CR)
Eagle (US/CR)
TCLba (US/CR)
Lumus (US/CR)

1440

Kocak (US/CR)
Cgnus (US/CR)
Mteor (US/CR)

0741

Altar (US/CR)
Pllux (US/CR)

Together in any sea or drift ice hex in Iceland, British Isles, North Atlantic or Labrador Sea Zones (can stack with other NATO units)

Huron (CA/DD)
Msbgr (US/DD)
Moldr (WG/DD)
Scyla (UK/FF)
Krtnr (NE/FF)

3720: ORLAND, or 3516: BODO
F16 (NO/INT)

1831: KEFLAVIK

F15 (US/INT)
P3 (US/RCN) × 2

3532: WICK

TOR (UK/INT)
BUC (UK/ATK)

3334: STORNOWAY

NIM (UK/RCN) × 2

Soviet (set up second)

Any sea or drift ice hexes in Norwegian Sea or Greenland Sea Zone, but not stacked with or adjacent to any NATO unit (can be in same hex or hexes)

Volga (SN)
PPslv (SN)
FKzlv (SN)
MKaln (SN)

Any sea hexes in British Isles Zone, but not stacked with or adjacent to any NATO unit (can be in same hex)

Lnsky (SN)
CCher (SS)

Any sea hexes in North Atlantic Zone, but not stacked with or adjacent to any NATO unit (can be in same hex)

IKnev (SN)
MTsky (SS)

Any sea hexes in Labrador Sea Zone, but not stacked with or adjacent to any NATO unit (can be in same hex)

ABlgn (SN)
Kvsky (SS)

Any sea or drift ice hex on either map, but not stacked with or adjacent to any NATO unit (can stack with any other Soviet units)

Oka (SN)

Together in any sea hex within 5 hexes of Tromso (3311)

Baku (CV)
Kursk (CG)
Zozly (CG)
Vryag (CG)
Osmtr (DD)
Sprnv (DD)
Obrsv (DD)
Dzhsk (FF)
Grzin (FF)

On *Baku*

Y36 (INT)

3705: POLYARNYY

T16D (RCN)
T95D (RCN)
T95F (RCN)
I38 (RCN)

Together in any sea hex within 8 hexes of Bodo (3516)

Kiev (CV) On *Kiev*
Frnze (CG) Y36 (INT)
Tula (CG)
Svtpl (CG)
Nklyv (CG)
Udloy (DD)
Grmkly (FF)
Mnshk (FF)

3605: PECHENGA

M25 (INT)
S24 (INT)
T26 (ATK)

3806: KILPYAVR

S27 (INT)
T16C (ATK)
T16G (ATK)
T16E (EW)

VICTORY CONDITIONS

The NATO player gains Victory Points (VP) as follows:

CONDITION	VICTORY POINTS
Each Soviet CG, CV, or SN sunk	2
Each Soviet DD, FF, or SS sunk	1
Each Soviet INT or ATK air unit destroyed	1
Each NATO CR unit that reaches Holy Loch/Faslane (3736)	4
Each NATO CR that reaches Reykjavik (1830)	1

The NATO player loses VP for the following reasons:

CONDITION	VICTORY POINTS
US CV <i>Rsvlt</i> sunk	-12
Each NATO CG, SN, or UK CV sunk	-4
Each NATO CR or DD sunk	-3
Each NATO FF sunk, or INT or ATK air unit destroyed	-2

Each Destroyed combat result achieved against a NATO airfield in Britain or Iceland -12

Each Damage 2 combat result achieved against a NATO airfield in Britain or Iceland -8

Each Damage 1 combat result achieved against a NATO airfield in Britain or Iceland -4

Each Destroyed combat result achieved against a NATO airfield in Norway -9

Each Damage 2 combat result achieved against a NATO airfield in Norway -6

Each Damage 1 combat result achieved against a NATO airfield in Norway -3

Each Soviet SN, SS, or Task Force (*not* Task Group) ending the game in the North Atlantic or Labrador Sea Zone -2

Each Soviet SN, SS, or Task Force (*not* Task Group) ending the game in the British Isles Zone -1

Note: VP for damaging NATO airfields are awarded on the basis of the *actual* combat result, not on cumulative damage. For example, a Norwegian airfield with a Damage 1 marker that receives a Damage 1 result has its marker adjusted to Damage 2, but the NATO player loses only 3 VP for this result (in addition to the 3 VP for the first Damage 1 result).

At the end of the game, the NATO player adds up his VP and consults the following chart to determine the winner:

NATO VP	VICTORY LEVEL
+28 or more	NATO Decisive Victory
+15 to +27	NATO Substantive Victory
+2 to +14	NATO Marginal Victory
-10 to +1	Soviet Marginal Victory
-21 to -11	Soviet Substantive Victory
-22 or less	Soviet Decisive Victory

15.4 SCENARIO 9: NATO Resurgent

BACKGROUND: The recent Soviet attempt to sever NATO's North Atlantic shipping lanes has been defeated. Soviet warships that had transited the GIUK gap only two weeks ago have been either sunk or sent reeling back to the safer waters of the Norwegian Sea. With the safety of the North Atlantic convoys assured, SACLANT has been able to concentrate NATO naval forces for a counterattack into Soviet-controlled waters. With most of Norway under Soviet domination, SACLANT has been ordered to direct this offensive against Soviet naval forces in the Norwegian Sea so that NATO amphibious forces can be safely landed on the Scandinavian coast. Furthermore, with the Norwegian Sea under NATO domination, Soviet ground forces in Norway would be subject to severe logistical constraints, for their only supply route would be over the tenuous mountain roads of northern Norway.

The Commander-in-Chief of the Red Banner Northern Fleet is still recovering from the disastrous North Atlantic campaign. Recognizing that NATO will inevitably come roaring back north of the GIUK gap, the Soviets have deployed the handful of surviving submarines in a weak patrol line from Iceland to the Norwegian coast. Only meager surface forces outlived the recent debacle, but those that did have recently replenished at Murmansk and have been ordered south again to protect the Soviet-controlled Norwegian coast. Despite its recent losses, this force is still potent; it includes the VSTOL carrier *Kiev* and the cruisers *Frunze* and *Tula*.

Should NATO attempt to probe into the Norwegian Sea, the Red Banner Northern Fleet still has enormous air power at its disposal, for the long-range strike aircraft operating out of airfields on the Kola Peninsula were relatively unscathed in the recent campaign. A combined regiment of *Backfire/Badger* aircraft is reportedly fully operational and several squadrons of long-range interceptors have been transferred to the Kola from the Baltic.

NATO naval forces have been assigned a triple mission by SACLANT. Their most important task is to protect the convoys of amphibious transports that are currently forming in NATO ports.

A large US Navy Amphibious Ready Group has recently departed Norfolk, carrying a powerful Marine Amphibious Brigade. In Britain, a Royal Marine Commando brigade has been embarking onto a motley collection of transports, including two North Sea passenger ferries. Sixteen NATO destroyers and frigates are available in the North Atlantic for escort duty, including the multinational Standing Naval Force Atlantic squadron. It has not yet been determined exactly where NATO amphibious forces will disembark, but several key Norwegian airfields and ports currently under Soviet control are being considered for invasion.

SACLANT's second mission is to eliminate the Soviet naval presence in the Norwegian Sea. In order to fulfill this task, SACLANT has ordered four US and Royal Navy submarines to penetrate the GIUK gap in order to initiate offensive operations in the area. These submarines are: USS *Olympia* (SSN-717), USS *Jack* (SSN-605), HMS *Trafalgar* (S-107), and HMS *Conqueror* (S-48). In addition, powerful NATO air units will be at SACLANT's disposal for anti-shipping duties in the Norwegian Sea. Carrier Air Wing 1 (see Scenario 7 for a description of this wing), embarked on USS *Theodore Roosevelt* (CVN-71), 801 Squadron (*Sea Harriers*), deployed onboard HMS *Invincible* (R-05), and the RAF's 12 Squadron (*Buccaneers*), 43 Squadron (*Tornados*), and 74 Squadron (*Phantoms*) will all participate in this operation.

The final task assigned to SACLANT is to disrupt Soviet air operations in the Kola Peninsula in order to ensure the safety of NATO shipping in the Norwegian Sea. The only methods by which this mission can be fulfilled are with carrier-based air power — a highly dangerous task, since the carriers will have to approach the Kola at close range — or with anti-airfield cruise missiles. Four US Navy warships belonging to SACLANT are armed with the non-nuclear BGM-109F *Tomahawk* missile, an accurate weapon that can be fired at over 1,200 miles from its target.

MAP

Use both maps in this scenario.

DEPLOYMENT

Soviet (set up first)

Any sea hexes in Norwegian Sea Zone, but not stacked with any other unit

IKnev (SN)
MKaln (SN)
Lnsky (SN)
Mgnit (SS)
CCher (SS)

Any sea or drift ice hexes in Iceland Zone, but not stacked with any other unit

Volga (SN)
PPslv (SN)

Together in any sea hex within 4 hexes of Tromsø (3311)

Kiev (CV)
Frnze (CG)
Tula (CG)
Svtpl (CG)
Osmtr (DD)
Udloy (DD)
Grzin (FF)

On *Kiev*
Y36 (INT)

3605: PECHENGA

T16D (RCN)
T95D (RCN)
T95F (RCN)
I38 (RCN)

3705: POLYARNYY

S24 (INT)
T26 (ATK)
T16E (EW)

3806: KILPYAVR

M25 (INT)
T16C (ATK)
T16G (ATK)

NATO (set up second)

Any sea hexes within 2 hexes of Vago (2930), but not stacked with or adjacent to any Soviet units (can be in same hex)

Olypa (US/SN)
Jack (US/SN)

Any sea hexes within 2 hexes of Sumburgh (3529) (can be in same hex)

Conqr (UK/SN)
Tflgr (UK/SN)

3736: HOLY LOCH/FASLANE

Intpd (UK/AA)
STris (UK/AA)
SLnct (UK/AA)
SBdvr (UK/AA)

3736: HOLY LOCH/FASLANE, or 3834: ROSYTH (can be split up between the hexes as desired)

Msbgr (US/DD)
Huron (CA/DD)
Moldr (WG/DD)
Krtmr (NE/FF)

Invcl (UK/CV)
Brmhbm (UK/DD)
York (UK/DD)
Bdswd (UK/FF)
Andrm (UK/FF)
Mnrva (UK/FF)
Arrow (UK/FF)

On *Invcl*

HAR (UK/INT)
SKG (UK/AEW)

3834: ROSYTH

Elk (UK/AA)
Nrlnd (UK/AA)

1830: REYKJAVIK, or any one hex in North Atlantic Zone (can be split up between Reykjavik and North Atlantic hex as desired)

Rsvlt (US/CV)
Vrgna (US/CG)
Vncns (US/CG)
Rdgrs (US/DD)
Cnoly (US/DD)
Bgley (US/FF)
Knox (US/FF)
Gary (US/FF)
James (US/FF)

On *Rsvlt*

F14 (US/INT)×2
F18 (US/INT)×2
A6 (US/ATK)
EA6 (US/EW)
S3 (US/RCN)
E2 (US/AEW)

1830: REYKJAVIK

Ijima (US/AA)
Ogden (US/AA)
Sgnaw (US/AA)
Gntwn (US/AA)

Together in any sea hex in North Atlantic Zone (can stack with other NATO units)

BWood (US/AA)
Austn (US/AA)
Nwprr (US/AA)
FFshr (US/AA)
Alamo (US/AA)
HrCty (US/AA)

3532: WICK

PHN (UK/INT)
TOR (UK/INT)
BUC (UK/ATK)

3334: STORNOWAY

NIM (UK/RCN)×3

SPECIAL RULES

1. The Soviet player cannot attack NATO bases.
2. UK HAR and US F18, A6, and S3 air units can each make one SSM attack in the game. The F18 has an SSM Range/Attack Value of 1/30 (1/15 if damaged); the HAR, A6, and S3 have an SSM Range/Attack Value of 2/40 (2/20 if damaged).
3. The US CG *Vrgna*, the DD's *Rdgrs* and *Cnoly*, and the SN *Olypa* can each make one cruise missile (CM) SSM attack in the game. A CM attack is considered normal SSM Combat, but it can be used only against a Soviet airfield. The airfield's Close Anti-Air value and CAP (if any) are taken into account in defensive combat against a CM attack, but the attacker does *not* subtract 4 from his attack die roll as he normally would in an SSM attack against a port or airfield (see 14.1). Unlike normal SSM attacks, cruise missile attacks can transit full land hexsides on the way to the target. The SSM Range/Attack Value of a CM attack is 25/60 (25/40 if the unit is damaged).
4. Each NATO AA unit that reaches Bergen (3926), Trondheim (3721), Orland (3720), Bodo (3516), Andoya (3313), Narvik (3412), or Tromso (3311) is immediately removed from the map. The NATO player receives VP for this accomplishment.

GAME LENGTH

9 Game Turns

VICTORY CONDITIONS

The NATO player gains Victory Points as follows:

CONDITION	VICTORY POINTS
Each Soviet CV, CG, or SN sunk	2
Each Soviet DD, FF, or SS sunk	1
Each Soviet INT or ATK air unit destroyed	1
Each Destroyed combat result achieved against a Soviet airfield	9
Each Damage 2 combat result achieved against a Soviet airfield	6
Each Damage 1 combat result achieved against a Soviet airfield	3

Note: VP for damaging Soviet airfields are awarded on the basis of the *actual* combat result, not on cumulative damage. For

example, a Soviet airfield with a Damage 1 marker that receives a Damage 1 result has its marker adjusted to Damage 2, but the Soviet player loses only 3 VP for this result (in addition to the 3 VP for the first Damage 1 result).

The NATO player also receives VP for NATO AA units that reach the hexes listed below. The AA's Amphibious Assault value is enhanced by the indicated multiplier for the hex, and the NATO player receives the result in VP.

DESTINATION HEX	AMPHIBIOUS ASSAULT POINT MULTIPLIER
Bergen (3926)	× 1/2
Trondheim (3721), Orland (3720), or Bodo (3516)	× 1
Andoya (3313), Narvik (3412), or Tromso (3311)	× 1 1/2

The NATO player loses VP as follows:

CONDITION	VICTORY POINTS
US CV <i>Rsvlt</i> sunk	-12
Each NATO CG or SN, or UK CV, or AA unit with an Amphibious Assault Value of 8 sunk	-4
Each NATO DD sunk	-3
Each NATO FF or AA unit with an Amphibious Assault Value of 4 sunk	-2
Each NATO INT or ATK air unit destroyed	-2
Each NATO AA unit with an Amphibious Assault Value of 2 sunk	-1
Each Soviet SN, SS, or Task Force (<i>not</i> Task Group) ending the game in the Norwegian Sea Zone	-3

At the end of the game, the NATO player adds up his VP and consults the following chart to determine the winner:

NATO VP	VICTORY LEVEL
+60 or more	NATO Decisive Victory
+39 to +59	NATO Substantive Victory
+20 to +38	NATO Marginal Victory
+3 to +19	Soviet Marginal Victory
-14 to +2	Soviet Substantive Victory
-15 or less	Soviet Decisive Victory

Advanced Game Rules

16.0 Time of Year

*"It ain't the guns or armament, or the money they can pay.
It's the close cooperation that makes them win the day;
It ain't the individual, nor the army as a whole,
But the everlastin' teamwork of every bloomin' soul."*

— J. M. Knox

At the beginning of the Advanced Game Scenario, the players must agree upon the *time of year* in which the scenario will take place. The time of year determines the number of turns of darkness in each day, the limit of drift ice, and the weather. There are four time of year periods: 1 (January-February), 2 (March-April or November-December), 3 (May-June or September-October), and 4 (July-August). At the beginning of the scenario, the players choose a single period and place the Time of Year marker in the corresponding box on the Time of Year Track.

16.1 DARKNESS

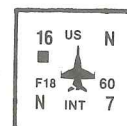
In the Advanced Game, there are two types of Game Turns: day and darkness. Note that Night Game Turns are not necessarily dark and AM or PM Game Turns are not necessarily day. If the scenario is taking place in Period 1 (January-February), all three Game Turns in the day (AM, PM, and Night) are *dark*, with the exception of the Labrador Sea, North Atlantic, and British Isles Zones where the AM Game Turn is *day* in this period. If the scenario takes place in Period 2 (March-April or November-December), the AM Game Turn is *day* and the PM/Night Game Turns are *dark*. In Period 3 (May-June or September-October), the AM/PM Game Turns are *day*, and the Night Game Turn is *dark*. In Period 4 (July-August), all three Game Turns are *day*.

Effects of Day: All normal rules are in effect during day Game Turns.

Effects of Darkness: The following limitations are applied to air units during dark Game Turns:

- **Air Unit Activation:** Air units based on airfields can activate normally in darkness. However, only US "all-weather" carrier-based units (all-weather units have a small box (■)

■ ALL-WEATHER INDICATION



printed on their counters) can activate from a carrier in darkness. Darkness does not affect an air unit's ability to perform CAP and strategic missions, however.

- **Bombing:** US all-weather air units can perform Bombing Combat normally during darkness. However, all other air units have their Bombing values *halved* (round fractions up) in Game Turns of darkness. Air units can perform SSM and ASW Combat normally in darkness.
- **Air-to-Air Combat:** All Soviet INT and ATK air units have their Anti-Air values reduced by *one* (to a minimum of 1) in darkness Game Turns. NATO air units are unaffected when performing Air-to-Air Combat in darkness.

16.2 DRIFT ICE

Drift ice hexes can be affected by the time period in which the scenario takes place. If the scenario takes place in Period 1 (January-February), all drift ice hexes are considered *pack ice* hexes instead (see 5.0). In Periods 2 or 3 (March-April, May-June, September-October, or November-December), drift ice hexes are not altered; see below for special drift ice hex rules. In Period 4 (July-August), all drift ice hexes are considered *sea* hexes instead.

Effects of Drift Ice: Drift ice hexes do not affect combat in any way, but they do have the following effects on movement:

- **Surface Units:** Surface units must expend *two* points from their Movement Allowance to enter a drift ice hex; they can exit a drift ice hex with no additional movement penalty. A surface unit is always permitted to move at least one hex during its activation, regardless of its Movement Allowance. Thus, a unit with a Movement Allowance of 1 can enter a drift ice hex.
- **Submarines:** Submarines can enter drift ice hexes without penalty. However, a submarine moving at full speed (see 5.3) cannot enter a drift ice hex; similarly, a submarine occupying a drift ice hex cannot be activated at full speed.

17.0 Weather

"We must challenge Capitalist naval superiority on all the seas and oceans of the world."

— Admiral Sergei G. Gorshkov

During the Weather Phase, which occurs in the Strategic Cycle of AM Game Turns only, either player rolls the die and consults the Weather Table. The die roll is cross-referenced with the column corresponding to the period in which the scenario takes place (see 16.0). There are three possible results: clear, squall, or storm.

If the result is clear, nothing further is done; the weather has no effect for the next three Game Turns. If the result is squall or storm, the die must be rolled again and the Zone Table must be consulted. Apply this die roll to the table to determine the

zones that are affected by the squall or storm. Players should note down on their Player Records the names of the affected zones — all hexes within these zones are affected by the result for the next three Game Turns.

Example of Weather: Assume a scenario is being played in July (Period 4). During the Weather Phase, the Soviet player rolls the die and gets an 8. Checking this roll on the "July-August" column of the Weather Table, the players find a "Squall" result. The Soviet player again rolls the die and obtains a 0. Applying this roll to the Zone Table, it is determined that the squall result applies to the Labrador Sea and Barents Sea Zones.

Squalls: Squalls have the following effects:

1. A surface unit must spend two points from its Movement Allowance to enter a sea or coastal hex in a squall zone. If a surface unit enters a drift ice hex in a squall zone, combine the squall/drift ice penalties (that is, the unit must expend *four* points from its Movement Allowance to enter the hex).

- Remember that a surface unit is always permitted to move at least one hex during its activation.
2. Surface units occupying a hex in a squall zone have Limited Detection Zones only (see 9.1).
 3. A submarine's Movement Allowance is not affected by squalls.
 4. If an aircraft carrier occupies a squall zone, only all-weather air units (see 16.1) can become active, perform Strategic Air Missions, or perform CAP. Air units occupying airfields in a squall zone are unaffected.
 5. Air units can move through a squall zone with no detrimental effect.
 6. Invasions cannot take place in a squall zone (see 18.0).
 7. If the Logistics option is being used (see 20.0), at-sea replenishment cannot take place in a squall zone.

Storms: Storms have the following effects:

1. A surface unit must spend *four* points from its Movement Allowance to enter any type of hex in a storm zone. Remember that a surface unit is always permitted to move at least one hex during its activation.
2. A submarine's Movement Allowance is not affected by storms.
3. No air units in an airfield or on an aircraft carrier that occupy a storm zone can be activated, perform Strategic Air Missions, or initiate CAP.

4. No Strategic Air Mission can be performed in a storm zone, even by air units that began the Strategic Air Phase in a clear or squall zone.
5. Air units can move through a storm zone with no detrimental effect.
6. All Local and Strategic Detection markers on surface and submarine units that occupy or enter a storm zone are immediately removed. Thus, a unit in a storm zone cannot be attacked.
7. No attacks can be initiated by any unit in a storm zone, even if the unit begins its activation in a squall or clear zone.
8. Units in a storm zone do not exert Limited or Extended Detection Zones, nor do Limited or Extended Detection Zones extend *into* storm zones.
9. Invasions cannot take place in a storm zone (see 18.0).
10. If the Logistics option is being used (see 20.0), no at-sea or in-port replenishment can take place in a storm zone.

Note: A surface unit that begins its movement inside a squall or storm zone can move into an adjacent hex that is within a clear zone with no effect on its Movement Allowance. A surface unit that begins movement in a clear zone must begin to pay the movement penalties for the squall or storm zone upon entering the first hex in the squall/storm zone; if the unit does not have enough points in its Movement Allowance, it cannot enter the squall or storm zone (remember, however, that a surface unit can always move one hex).

18.0 Invasion of NATO Bases

"Today, a fleet operating against the shore is able not only to solve the tasks connected with territorial changes but to directly influence the course and even the outcome of war. In this connection the operations of a fleet against the shore have assumed paramount importance in armed conflict at sea."

— Admiral Sergei G. Gorshkov

During the Invasion Phase of the Strategic Cycle (which occurs in AM Game Turns only), first the Soviet player and then the NATO player can place Ground Force markers on the map. There are three types of Ground Force markers: Marine, Parachute, and Commando.

18.1 INVASION HEXES

Ground Force markers can be placed only in *NATO bases*. Soviet bases can *never* be invaded. Subject to the invasion rules, the NATO player is permitted to place his Ground Force markers in *any* NATO base during an Invasion Phase. The Soviet player, however, can invade only those NATO bases that the *current* Soviet strategy (see 27.0) allows to be invaded.

Ground Force markers can be placed in eligible NATO bases by both players an unlimited number of times per game, even if it already contains friendly or enemy markers. Once a Ground Force marker is placed in a NATO base, it must remain there for the rest of the game.

NATO Airfields: During the Soviet Invasion Segment, *at the moment* a NATO airfield is invaded, all NATO air units on that base can freely relocate. The NATO player picks up the air units and places them in the "Occupy" Return to Base box of the zone in which they are situated on his Strategic Air Display. The air units must remain in the Return to Base box for the rest

of the current turn and for the next *two* turns. These units cannot be activated, perform strategic missions, initiate CAP, or provide "escort" or "cover" for parachute assaults (see 18.3) during this time. During the Strategic Air Mission Termination Phase of the next Night Game Turn, the air units can be relocated to any NATO airfield (except a destroyed airfield) in the zone they occupy that is not currently controlled by the Soviet player (see 18.5) and subject to stacking restrictions (see 6.1). If no airfield is available, the air units are destroyed.

Note that the NATO player is not forced to remove his air units during the Soviet Invasion Segment. He can instead activate them during the air Action Segment of the Action Phase if the airfield is not Soviet controlled.



18.2 AMPHIBIOUS ASSAULTS

In a player's Invasion Segment, he can place Marine markers in eligible NATO bases that are adjacent to at least one of his Amphibious Assault (AA) surface units. The NATO player can also place Marine markers in NATO bases *occupied* by his AA units; since the Soviet player may not have units end their movement in a NATO base, he could not do so. The NATO base in which a Marine marker is placed can be occupied by enemy or friendly units, including other Ground Force markers. NATO surface, submarine, and air units occupying a base in which Soviet Ground Force markers are also situated continue to function normally, unless the Soviet player gains "control" of the base (see 18.5). Amphibious assaults cannot take place in squall or storm zones.

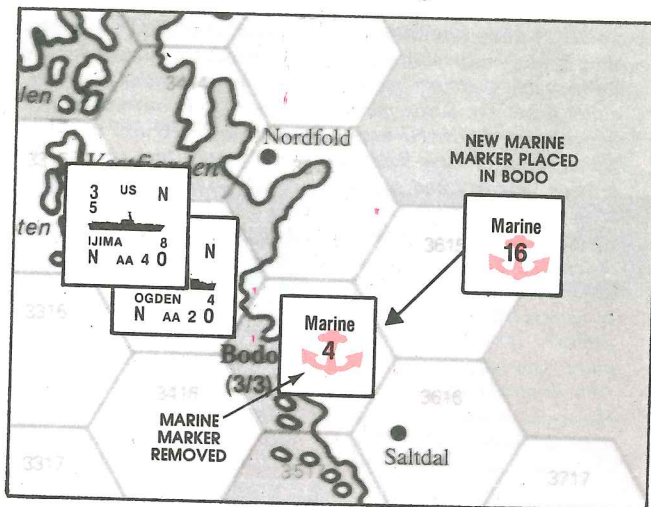
Conducting Amphibious Assaults: The owning player states which base he will invade and states which AA units in the adjacent hex (or, in the case of the NATO player, the base hex

itself) will participate in the invasion. He places a Marine marker of the appropriate value in the base or augments the Marine marker already occupying the base. The AA unit(s) used in the invasion and the invaded base should be noted down, since the AA unit cannot perform another amphibious assault for the rest of the game.

Amphibious assaults are voluntary. If several AA units are eligible to invade, the owning player states which will take part. AA units can move and perform combat normally, even after they have executed their single amphibious assault.

Marine Markers: Each player has his own set of Marine markers. NATO markers are used for NATO invasions and Soviet markers are used for Soviet invasions. Marine markers have printed numbers. Only one Marine marker per player can occupy a NATO base at any time. If a player makes additional amphibious assaults against a base hex already containing a friendly Marine marker, simply add up the total value of Marine markers in the hex and replace the existing marker with a new one reflecting its augmented value.

Value of AA Units: Each AA unit has an Amphibious Assault value, from 2 to 8, printed on it (see 2.3). The Amphibious Assault value determines the value of the Marine marker placed in a base due to an invasion. If more than one AA unit participates in an invasion, combine their Amphibious Assault values. An AA unit must be unloaded as a whole into a base; a player cannot unload some points from an AA unit into one base and the rest into another base later in the game.



Example of Amphibious Assault: The NATO player has a Marine marker with a value of 4 in Bodo, and he has the AA units Iijima (Amphibious Assault Value: 8) and Ogden (Amph Value: 4) in an adjacent hex. During the Invasion Phase, the NATO player decides to conduct an amphibious assault against Bodo using both AA units. Their combined Amphibious Assault value is 12, which, when combined with the existing Marine marker of 4, yields 16. A new NATO Marine marker worth 16 is placed in Bodo and the old marker is removed. The NATO player notes down the hexes where Iijima and Ogden unloaded, since they cannot be used for an amphibious assault again for the rest of the game.

18.3 PARACHUTE ASSAULTS

Players can invade NATO bases with Parachute markers. Each player has a set of Parachute markers, which read "PARA 8" and include the battalion designations of the units. All Parachute markers have a value of 8.

The NATO base in which a Parachute marker is placed can be occupied by enemy or friendly units, including other Ground Force markers. NATO surface, submarine, and air units situated in such a hex continue to function normally, unless the

Soviet player gains "control" of the base (see 18.5). Unlike Marine markers, Parachute markers are placed individually. A base hex can contain any number of friendly and enemy Parachute markers. Parachute assaults cannot take place in a squall or storm zone.

Parachute markers are made available to players in scenario set-up instructions (see 28.3) and by reinforcements (see 26.0). If a player has Parachute markers, he places them aside for future use. They can be saved by the owning player and can be used at any time during the game as he desires, although once placed in a base hex, they cannot be moved again.

Placement of Parachute Markers: Parachute markers can be placed on the map only during the Soviet and NATO Invasion Segments. If a player wishes to place a Parachute marker on an eligible NATO base, at least one of the following two conditions must be fulfilled:

1. There are no enemy INT air units situated within range of the base (that is, within half the enemy INT air unit's Movement Allowance from its airfield to the invasion base hex); or,
2. If there are enemy INT air units within range of the base to be invaded (that is, within half their Movement Allowance to the base), they all provide "cover" for the base. The invading player must provide "escort" if he wishes to invade the hex by specifying any or all of his INT units within range of the base to be invaded. The invading player compares the combined Anti-Air values of all his "escort" INT air units with the combined Anti-Air values of all the enemy "cover" INT units; if the "escort" Anti-Air value is greater than the "cover" Anti-Air value, then the Parachute marker can be placed in the base to be invaded.

The friendly air units providing this "escort" (but not the enemy air units providing "cover") cannot be activated, perform Strategic Air Missions, or initiate CAP for the next three Game Turns. The owning player may wish to place these units in the "Occupy" Return to Base box of the zone in which they are situated on his Strategic Air Display to indicate that they are unable to function for the next three Game Turns. During the Strategic Air Mission Termination Phase of the next Night Game Turn, these units are returned to a friendly airfield in the zone they occupy.

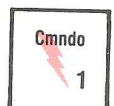
Note: The same friendly air units can be used to "cover" more than one base at a time. Carrier-based INT air units must also be taken into account when determining "escort" and "cover." Parachute markers can be placed in NATO bases that contain NATO INT air units as long as condition 2, above, is fulfilled.

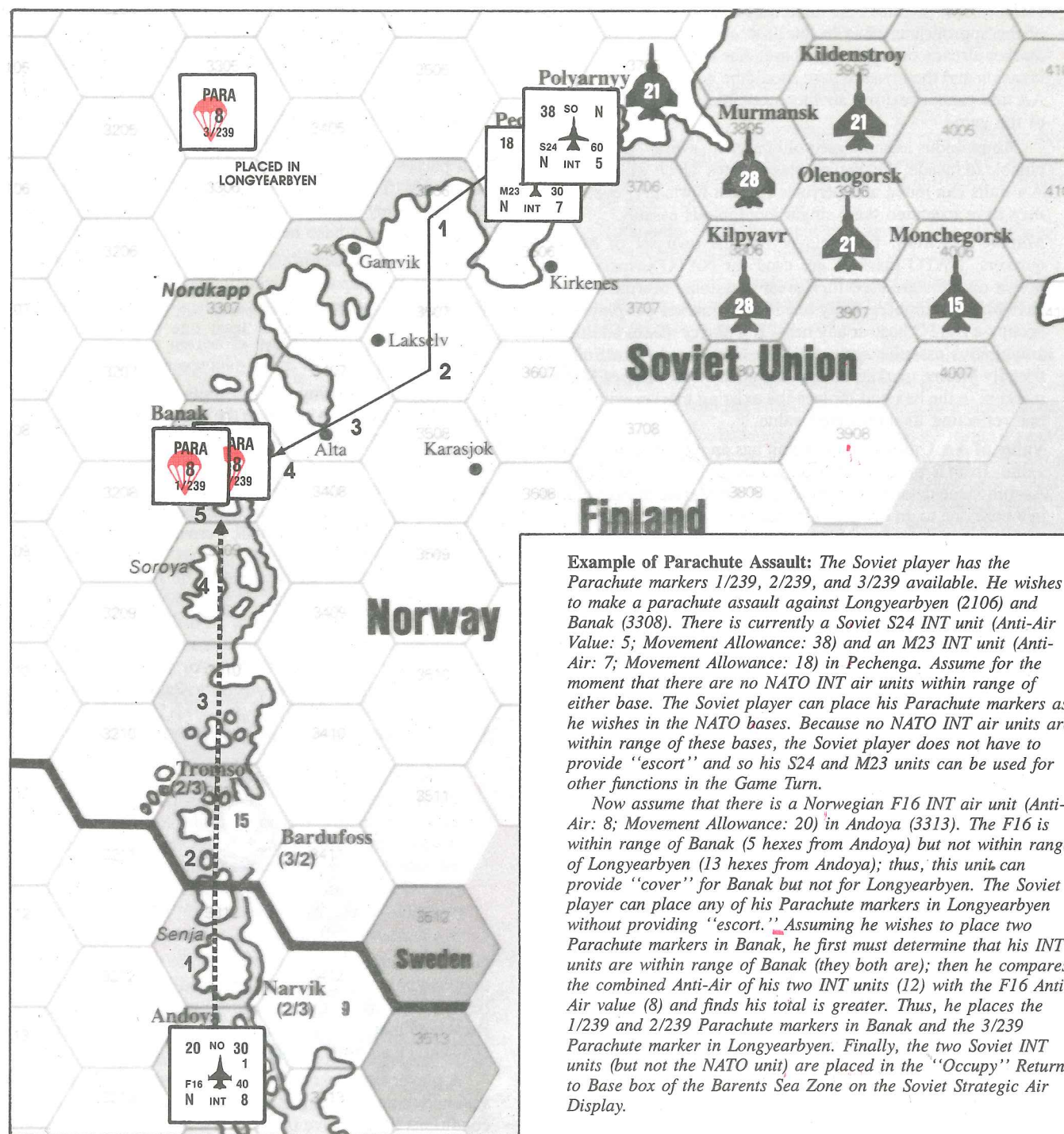
A player can make more than one parachute assault per Invasion Segment as long as all bases that are invaded fulfill the conditions listed above (and, for the Soviet player, the current Soviet strategy allows the base to be invaded).

18.4 COMMANDO ASSAULTS

Players can invade NATO bases with Commando markers. Each player has a set of Commando markers, which read "CMDO 1." All Commando markers have a value of 1.

The NATO base in which a Commando marker is placed can be occupied by enemy or friendly units, including other Ground Force markers. NATO surface, submarine, and air units situated in such a hex continue to function normally, unless the Soviet player gains "control" of the base (see 18.5). Commando markers are placed individually. A base can contain any number of NATO and Soviet Commando markers. Commando assaults cannot take place in a squall or storm zone.





Commando markers are made available to players by die rolls during the scenario set-up (see 28.3). If a player has Commando markers, he places them aside for future use. They can be saved by the owning player and can be used at any time during the game he desires, although once placed in a base they cannot be moved again.

Placement of Commando Markers: Commando markers are placed on the map only during the players' Invasion Segments. To place a Commando marker, a friendly submarine must be adjacent to an eligible NATO base (or, in the case of the NATO player, the submarine can be in the base hex itself). A submarine fulfilling this condition can place one Commando marker per Invasion Phase. Subject to Commando marker availability, the same submarine can place Commando markers in bases an unlimited number of times per game. Different submarines can place Commando markers in the same or different bases during the same segment.

18.5 CONTROL OF NATO BASES

How to Determine Control: If no Soviet Ground Force markers occupy a NATO base, the NATO player automatically controls that base. However, if Soviet Ground Force markers occupy a NATO base, the players must determine control of that base at various times during the game (see below). To determine control, each player combines the values of all his Marine, Parachute, and Commando units (and, for the NATO player, the base's Intrinsic Defense value; see below) in the base. The two sums are compared. The Soviet player controls the base if he has *at least twice* the sum of the NATO player; otherwise, the NATO player controls the base. Control of a base can change several times during a game.

NATO Intrinsic Defense: All NATO bases have an Intrinsic Defense value printed in their hexes (in addition to their Close Anti-Air values). When determining control of a base, the

NATO player includes the base's Intrinsic Defense value in the sum of his Ground Force markers. This value is taken into account even if there are no NATO Ground Force markers in the hex. The Intrinsic Defense value can never be eliminated.

When to Determine Control: Control of NATO bases must be determined during the Political Events Phase of the Strategic Cycle each time the Armistice marker progresses (see 25.0). If the Armistice marker advances, the Soviet player receives Victory Points for the NATO bases under his control. The control of NATO ports and airfields must also be calculated in the Control Segment of the Invasion Phase. However, the Soviet player never receives Victory Points for controlling a NATO base in the Control Segment.

Effects of Control: If the NATO player controls a base, the base retains its normal capabilities. Until a base falls under Soviet control, it continues to be used normally even if it is currently occupied by Soviet Ground Force markers.

If the Soviet player controls a NATO base, he may gain Victory Points during the Political Events Phase (see 28.0). Also, if a NATO airfield or port comes under Soviet control during either the Political Events Phase or the Control Segment of the Invasion Phase, a Destroyed marker is immediately placed in the hex (if the airfield or port already has a Destroyed marker, nothing further is done). NATO air units that occupy an airfield when the Soviet player gains control of it are immediately eliminated (remember, however, that NATO air units in an invaded airfield can relocate; see 18.1). NATO air units on CAP over an airfield that comes under Soviet control are eliminated in the CAP Landing Phase; NATO air units on strategic missions that originated in an airfield that comes under Soviet control can return to any available NATO-controlled airfield in the same

zone during the Strategic Air Mission Termination Phase, subject to stacking restrictions (see 6.2).

NATO surface and submarine units are not affected by the capture of a NATO base. They can end their movement in a Soviet-controlled base as per the normal movement rules. If they occupy a base when it comes under Soviet control, they are *not* obligated to leave it.

The destroyed port or airfield loses its capabilities for the remainder of the game (see 14.1). In-port replenishment cannot occur at a destroyed port (see 20.6).

The Soviet player can *never* use a NATO base that he controls. Soviet submarines, surface, and air units cannot end their movement in a Soviet-controlled NATO base.

NOTABLE EXCEPTION: Soviet CR units can end their movement in a NATO port or airfield that is currently under Soviet control; see 28.5.

Note that a NATO base can change hands several times during a game. Each player can continue to place Ground Force markers in a NATO base hex, even if the hex has a Destroyed marker on it.

Example of Control: During the Control Segment of Game Turn 4, the Soviet player has a Marine marker worth 6, three Parachute markers (each worth 8), and two Commando markers (each worth 1) in Bodo. The NATO player has a Marine marker worth 4, one Parachute marker (8), one Commando (1), and Bodo's Intrinsic Defense value (3). The Soviet Ground Force sum is 32 ($6+24+2=32$); NATO's sum is 16 ($4+8+1+3=16$). Because the Soviet sum is at least twice the NATO sum, the Soviet player controls the base. A Destroyed marker is immediately placed on Bodo, and any NATO air units currently occupying the airfield are destroyed.

19.0 Sound Surveillance System (SOSUS) Hexes

"NATO has so far done the job for which it was created. It has kept the peace. But the elements which have so far assured the success of NATO — the rough balance of power, global stability, and trans-Atlantic solidarity — cannot be taken for granted; they have to be constantly renewed and adapted to the changing environment."

— Ambassador John G. H. Halstead

There are a number of SOSUS hexes on the map. These are underwater listening devices that are capable of detecting and tracking Soviet submarines.

19.1 UNITS AFFECTED BY SOSUS HEXES

Only Soviet submarines are affected by SOSUS hexes. Soviet surface units and all NATO units are completely unaffected.



19.2 EFFECTS OF SOSUS HEXES

Soviet Submarine Movement: At the moment a Soviet submarine enters a SOSUS hex during its activation, its movement is interrupted and the NATO player consults the Submarine Detection Table. Note that if the submarine already possesses a Strategic Detection marker, the NATO player does not consult the table.

The NATO player rolls the die, automatically subtracting two from the roll, and cross-references the modified result with the column corresponding to the type of submarine (SS, SN, Noisy SN, or SB). If the result is "D," place a Strategic Detection marker on the submarine; if it already possesses a Local Detection marker, flip it to its Strategic Detection side. On a result of "-", the submarine is not detected. After consulting the table, the submarine can resume its movement from the point of interruption. Note that a detection roll must be made for each SOSUS hex a Soviet submarine enters.

Detection Removal: In the Strategic Detection Removal Phase, all Soviet submarines possessing Strategic Detection markers that are located in a SOSUS hex or within three hexes of a SOSUS hex do *not* have their Strategic Detection markers removed.

20.0 Logistics (Optional)

"One must say that our fleet, moving out onto the expanse of the world ocean, on the question of rear support finds itself in an unequal situation compared with the fleets of other countries. The naval forces of the United States, for example, have at their disposal more than 500 bases from which American ships and naval aviation are supported . . . The Soviet Union does not have overseas military bases and does not intend to have any because the desire to seize the territory of another is alien to it."

— Admiral Sergei G. Gorshkov

The use of logistics makes the game more realistic, but lengthens playing time and necessitates record-keeping. Logistics should be used only in the Advanced Game.

20.1 THE LOGISTICS ROSTERS

There is one pad containing the Logistics Rosters for both players. One side of the pad contains the rosters for the United States and the United Kingdom, and the other side contains the rosters for Canada, the Netherlands, Norway, West Germany, and the Soviet Union.

Victory Games, Inc., grants permission to players to make photocopies of these rosters if they run out of those provided in the game.

Units on the rosters are listed by country and are subdivided into four categories: Surface, Carrier, Submarine, and Replenishment. Each unit has a series of boxes on which ammunition and fuel expenditure are recorded. A unit can never have more fuel or ammunition than the number of boxes on the roster. Checks on the Logistics Rosters should be made in pencil, since information will sometimes change as the game progresses.

Amphibious assault (AA) units, cargo units (CR), Soviet SB submarines, and air units are not listed on the rosters because logistics information is not kept for these units. The information on the rosters is open to both players at all times.

20.2 SURFACE UNITS AND AMMUNITION EXPENDITURE

4 US 8 3 2 TATNL 12 2 DD 2 3	4 SO 12 5 6 TULA 16 3 CG 6 4	4 UK N 6 ILTRS N 8 CV 4 4	4 NE 8 3 2 PHEIN 8 3 FF 5 0	5 NO 25 2 1 PCS3 25 N PC 1 0
---------------------------------------	---------------------------------------	------------------------------------	--------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

Surface combat units (except for aircraft carriers) have three types of ammunition boxes: Surface-to-Surface Missile (SSM), Anti-Submarine Warfare (ASW), and Area Anti-Air (AAA). If there are no boxes for one of these types printed on the roster, the surface unit can never perform that kind of combat. Also, when a surface unit has no more *unchecked* boxes in one of these categories, it can no longer employ the value corresponding to that ammunition type (it can, however, be replenished; see 20.6).

SSM Ammunition: When a unit participates in SSM Combat, one of its SSM boxes is checked off. If several surface units perform SSM Combat, each participating unit has an SSM box checked off. Some surface units have a star (★) next to their SSM boxes. This means the unit can replenish its SSM's only in-port, never at-sea (see 20.6).

Intensive and Maximum SSM Attacks: When surface units make an SSM attack, the owning player can state that any or all of his participating units are making an "intensive" or

"maximum" attack. In an intensive attack, the SSM Attack value of the participating units is multiplied by $1\frac{1}{2}$ (round fractions down), but *two* SSM boxes are checked off for each participating unit; in a maximum attack, the SSM Attack value of the participating units is multiplied by two, but *three* SSM boxes are checked off for each participating unit.

A stack of units can combine intense and maximum SSM attacks with normal SSM attacks. Some units in the stack can perform one kind of attack while others perform different forms.

Special SSM Ammunition: Some US surface units have two series of SSM boxes. This means the unit is armed with two kinds of SSM's: one kind of SSM is represented by the SSM values printed on the counter and the other is represented by the parenthesized values on the Logistics Roster (this second type also has a gray band over it). The number to the left of the slash in parentheses is the SSM Range of the second SSM type; the number to the right of the slash in parentheses is the SSM Attack value.

If a unit with two SSM types participates in an SSM attack, the owning player must indicate which SSM is being used (both types cannot be used in the same attack). The player checks off the box of the appropriate SSM type after the attack. Upon replenishment (see 20.6), both SSM types return to full capacity.

ASW Ammunition: If a surface unit participates in ASW Combat, the player checks off one of the unit's ASW boxes. A unit using its ASW value in defensive combat against a Torpedo attack does *not* have an ASW box checked off. However, once the unit has all its ASW boxes checked off, it can no longer use its ASW value in defensive combat against Torpedo attacks. Lack of ASW ammunition does not affect a unit's detection abilities.

AAA Ammunition: When a unit employs its Area AA value in defensive combat against an enemy SSM or Bombing attack, the owning player checks off one of the unit's AAA boxes. If the unit uses only its Close Anti-Air value, an AAA box is *not* checked off.

Aircraft Carriers: If an aircraft carrier uses its SSM, ASW, or AAA values in combat, this expenditure is recorded in the same manner as other surface units.

20.3 SUBMARINES AND AMMUNITION EXPENDITURE

2 US 18 6 2 JACK 18 6 SN N	1 NO N 6 STADT 8 2 SS N	2 SO 20 6 1 AMUR 12 3 SN N
-------------------------------------	----------------------------------	-------------------------------------

There are two types of ammunition possessed by submarines: SSM and Torpedo (TORP). All submarines have torpedoes, but many do not have SSM's. When all boxes of a type are checked off, the submarine can no longer use the value corresponding to that ammunition until it is replenished (see 20.6).

SSM Ammunition: When a submarine performs SSM Combat, one of its SSM boxes is checked off. Submarines can perform "intensive" and "maximum" SSM attacks like surface units (see 20.2). Also, some US submarines possess two kinds of SSM's, which are used in the same way as surface units.

Torpedo Ammunition: When a submarine participates in Torpedo or ASW Combat, the owning player checks off one of the TORP boxes on the roster. Submarines using their ASW value in defensive combat against a Torpedo attack do *not* expend TORP boxes, although once all its TORP boxes have been checked off, it can no longer use its ASW value in defensive combat against a Torpedo attack. Lack of Torpedo ammunition does not affect a submarine's detection abilities.

Intensive and Maximum Torpedo Attacks: When a submarine is making a Torpedo attack, the owning player can state that the attack is "intensive" or "maximum." These attacks expend ammunition and enhance the Torpedo value in the same way as intensive and maximum SSM attacks (see 20.2). Remember, however, that submarines are activated and attack individually.

20.4 AIR UNITS AND AMMUNITION EXPENDITURE

For each air unit based on an aircraft carrier that performs Bombing Combat, the owning player must check off one BOMB box belonging to the parent carrier. When all of an aircraft carrier's BOMB boxes have been checked off, air units based on that carrier can no longer perform Bombing Combat until it is replenished (see 20.6).

Air units based on airfields that perform Bombing and SSM Combat do *not* expend ammunition — their base is considered to possess an unlimited supply of both ammunition types. Air units performing ASW and Air-to-Air Combat never expend ammunition. Air units can always perform strategic and CAP missions regardless of ammunition expenditure.



SPECIAL SSM INDICATION

Aircraft SSM's: US and UK carriers have a special series of boxes labeled "AIR SSM." There are three types of Air SSM's: *Harpoon* (Hpn), *Maverick* (Mav), and *Sea Eagle* (SEg). Air units based on these carriers that possess a Special SSM Indicator (see 2.3) are permitted to perform SSM attacks. For each air unit performing an SSM attack, one AIR SSM box of the declared type is checked off. To determine the SSM values used in such attacks, consult the parenthesized numbers next to the AIR SSM boxes: the number to the left of the slash is the air unit's SSM Range; the number to the right of the slash is the air unit's SSM Attack value. When all of a carrier's AIR SSM boxes have been checked off, air units on that carrier can no longer perform SSM combat until the carrier is replenished (see 20.6).

Example: One A6 and two F18 units are based on the US CV Rsvlt. The two F18's are activated and perform a Bombing attack against a Soviet port. Two of the Rsvlt's BOMB boxes are checked off. The A6 is activated and performs an SSM attack against a Soviet surface unit. The NATO player specifies that a Harpoon (Hpn) will be used in the attack, so one of Rsvlt's Harpoon AIR SSM boxes is checked off.

20.5 MOVEMENT AND LOGISTICS

Non-carrier combat units must record the expenditure of fuel. Submarines, US aircraft carriers, cargo, replenishment, and amphibious assault units do not expend fuel. Units that expend fuel have FUEL boxes. Note that some surface units are nuclear-powered and do not expend fuel (nor does the US BB *Iowa*, even though it is not nuclear-powered); these units are listed as "UNLIM" (unlimited) in the Fuel column of the Logistics Rosters.

Fuel Expenditure: During the Fuel Phase of the Terminal Cycle (which takes place in Night Game Turns), all surface units on the maps possessing Fuel boxes have one of these boxes checked off. This mark is made regardless of how far the unit moved in the preceding Action Phases (it may not have moved at all).

Optional Fuel Expenditure: If players wish to keep more realistic records of fuel expenditure, they can agree not to check off Fuel boxes for units that do not move or that move no more

than one hex during each of the AM, PM, and Night Game Turns. To keep track of which units moved how far, put a slash (/) in a Fuel box if the unit moves more than one hex in any of the three Action Phases of the AM, PM, and Night Game Turns. If the unit does not move or moves only one hex, do not put a slash. During the Fuel Phase, a unit with a slash in the Fuel box has this box checked off. A unit that does not have a slash does not have the box checked off.

Out of Fuel: When all of a unit's Fuel boxes have been checked off, the unit has run out of fuel. Place an "Out of Fuel" marker on it. A unit that has run out of fuel has the following restrictions:

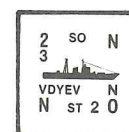
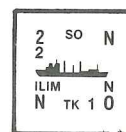
1. Its Movement Allowance is one.
2. Its Defense value is reduced by one (to a minimum of one).

20.6 REPLENISHMENT

In order to regain its full ammunition and fuel capacities, a unit must replenish. There are two types of replenishment: *in-port* and *at-sea*. A unit can replenish before *all* of its fuel and ammunition boxes have been checked off.

A unit that replenishes cannot become active in the Action Phase immediately following the Replenishment Phase. Units stacked in the same hex that are not replenishing can be activated. Players should adjust the alignment of a replenishing unit by turning it 180 degrees to remind them that the unit cannot be activated. Air units assigned to a replenishing aircraft carrier cannot be activated, but they can perform CAP and strategic missions. At the end of the Action Phase, players should re-adjust the replenishing units to their normal alignment.

If a unit is attacked while it is replenishing (that is, it is rotated 180 degrees), its Defense value is reduced by *one*. This reduction is in addition running out of fuel (see 18.5). However, a unit's minimum Defense value is one. In a stack, only those units actually replenishing suffer the Defense value penalty described above.



Replenishment Units: There are four types of replenishment units: combat support (CS), tanker (TK), ammunition (AM), and submarine tender (ST). Replenishment units have two sets of boxes for them on the roster: Ammunition Points (AP) and Fuel Points (FP).

In-Port Replenishment: To be replenished in-port, a unit must occupy a friendly port hex at the beginning of the Replenishment Phase. In-port replenishment cannot take place in a damaged or destroyed port or in a port situated in a storm zone. No more than *four* units (only one of which can be a replenishment unit or an aircraft carrier) can replenish in each port per Replenishment Phase. A player performs the following actions for each unit replenishing in-port:

- If the unit is a non-carrier surface combat unit, he erases all check marks in the unit's SSM, ASW, AAA, and Fuel boxes.
- If the unit is a submarine, he erases all check marks in the unit's TORP and SSM boxes.
- If the unit is an aircraft carrier, he erases all check marks in the unit's SSM, ASW, AAA, BOMB, and AIR SSM boxes.
- If the unit is a replenishment unit, he erases all check marks in the unit's AP and FP boxes.

Ports are considered to possess unlimited supply and do not "expend" points to replenish units.

In-Port Replenishment Restrictions: NATO units are subject to special restrictions when replenishing in-port:

1. Norwegian units can replenish only in Norwegian ports.
2. Non-Norwegian NATO units cannot erase SSM, ASW, AAA, TORP, BOMB, and AIR SSM check marks when replenishing in Norwegian ports. In effect, only their Fuel boxes can be erased.

Example of In-Port Replenishment: During the Replenishment Phase, the US units Luce (DD), Cnoly (DD), Cmden (CS), and Cnsto (TK) occupy the port of Rosyth. The NATO player can select only three (not four) of these units to replenish; he cannot select Cmden and Cnsto at the same time because they are both replenishment units. He selects Luce, Cnoly, and Cmden. All checked boxes in the selected units' logistics boxes are erased.

At-Sea Replenishment: To be replenished at-sea, a unit must occupy the same hex as a friendly replenishment unit (CS, AM, TK, ST) at the beginning of the Replenishment Phase. Subject to the restrictions listed below, for each Ammunition Point (AP) box of a replenishment unit checked off, the owning player can do one of five things for friendly units in the same hex:

- He can erase all SSM, ASW, and AAA check marks (except SSM's with a star) from a single non-carrier surface combat unit.
- He can erase all SSM and TORP check marks from a single submarine.
- He can erase all SSM, ASW, AAA, and AIR SSM check marks from a single aircraft carrier.
- He can erase a single BOMB box from an aircraft carrier.
- He can erase a single AP box from another replenishment unit in the same hex.

Subject to the restrictions listed below, for each Fuel Point (FP) box of a replenishment unit checked off, the owning player can do one of two things for friendly units in the same hex:

- He can erase all Fuel check marks from a single surface unit.
- He can erase a single FP box from another replenishment unit in the hex.

At-Sea Replenishment Restrictions: At-sea replenishment is subject to the following restrictions:

1. A given replenishment unit can check off no more than four AP's/FP's per Replenishment Phase.
2. Surface units can be replenished at-sea by CS, AM, and TK units only (not by ST units).

3. Submarines can be replenished by ST units only.
4. CS, AM, and TK units can be replenished at-sea by other CS, AM, or TK units. ST units cannot be replenished at-sea.
5. At-sea replenishment cannot take place in hexes situated in squall or storm zones.

NATO At-Sea Replenishment Restriction: In order to check off an AP, a replenishment unit must be of the same nationality as the unit it is replenishing. However, Canadian and Dutch (NE) units can be replenished by British AP's, and the West German unit can be replenished by US AP's. Any NATO replenishment unit can check off FP's to replenish any other NATO unit's fuel.

4	US	N
9		
RSVLT	N	
5	CV	6 0

3	US	18
7		5
NPNWS	22	
9	SN	N

4	US	8
3		2
BYRD	12	
2	DD	2 2

3	US	N
4		
CMDEN	N	
N	CS	4 0

3	US	N
3		
DIXON	N	
N	ST	1 0

Example of At-Sea Replenishment: During the Replenishment Phase, the US units Rsvlt (CV), NpNws (SN), Byrd (DD), Cmden (CS), and Dixon (ST) are stacked in the same hex. The NATO player checks off three AP boxes from Cmden (the maximum he is allowed to check off for a unit per Replenishment Phase); he decides to erase the Fuel check marks from Byrd (expending the FP), the SSM, ASW, and AAA check marks from Byrd (expending one AP), and a single BOMB check mark plus all ASW and AIR SSM check marks from Rsvlt (expending the second and third AP's). Finally, the NATO player checks off one of Dixon's AP's and erases all of NpNws's SSM and TORP checks.

20.7 OUT OF FUEL/AMMO MARKERS

Both players should check the Logistics Rosters when a unit uses a combat value. If the unit runs out of some kind of supply, the owning player should place an "Out of Fuel" or "Out of Ammo" marker on it. If it runs out of both fuel and ammunition, flip the marker over to its "Out of Fuel & Ammo" side. Note that an Out of Ammo marker is placed on a unit if it runs out of one kind of ammunition; it does not necessarily mean it has run out of all types of ammunition. The unit can still use combat values corresponding to the type of ammunition it has left. Remove Out of Fuel/Out of Ammo markers when a unit replenishes.

21.0 Tactical Nuclear Warfare (Optional)

"Nothing except a battle lost can be half so melancholy as a battle won."

— Arthur Wellesley, 1st Duke of Wellington

The game generally assumes that only conventional weapons are being used. However, upon mutual consent, the players may employ nuclear weapons, but only if Logistics (20.0) is being used. When using these rules, ignore the stacking limits listed in Section 6.0; any number of friendly surface combat units can be stacked together at the end of the surface Action Segment.

21.1 AVAILABILITY OF NUCLEAR WEAPONS

Only US, UK, and Soviet units can use nuclear weapons. There are four kinds of nuclear weapons: SSM, Bomb, ASW, and Area Anti-Air. If a surface or submarine unit possesses nuclear weapons in one or more of these four categories, it has

a small "N" printed next to the appropriate ammunition boxes on the Logistics Roster. Air units can also use nuclear weapons; each time a US, UK, or Soviet air unit makes a nuclear SSM, Bombing, or ASW attack, check off a single box of the appropriate ammunition type in the special "Air Unit Nuclear Attacks" section provided on the Logistics Roster. Submarines possessing nuclear ASW weapons have an "N" listed next to the Torpedo boxes.

21.2 USE OF NUCLEAR WEAPONS

When a player initiates combat and one or more participating units have nuclear weapons for that type of combat, he can declare that any or all of these units are using nuclear weapons. For each unit using nuclear weapons, the player crosses out its "N" (or checks off a box in the case of air units) in the appropriate area of the Logistics Roster. If a submarine's or surface unit's "N" has been crossed off, it cannot use that type of nuclear weapon for the remainder of the game. Air units can continue to make nuclear attacks subject to nuclear weapon availability on the Air Unit Nuclear Attack section of the Logistics Roster (see 21.1). Nuclear weapons can never be replenished.

Combat with nuclear weapons is resolved normally with the following exceptions:

SSM: A unit using nuclear SSM's has its SSM Attack value increased. For the number of enemy surface units (of any type) in a target hex, multiply the attacking unit's SSM Attack value by the multiple indicated in the following chart:

NUMBER OF SURFACE UNITS IN HEX	SSM ATTACK VALUE MULTIPLE
13 or more	×5
9-12	×4
5-8	×3
4 or less	×2

A unit using nuclear SSM's cannot make intensive and maximum attacks (see 20.2). Nuclear SSM's cannot be used against airfields and ports. Soviet air units possessing SSM values can make nuclear SSM attacks, but NATO air units cannot make nuclear SSM attacks. For each Soviet air unit making a nuclear SSM attack, the Soviet player checks off one SSM box in the Air Unit Nuclear Attacks section of the Logistics Roster.

Bombing: The Soviet S24 INT air unit and all US and UK INT and ATK air units can make nuclear Bombing attacks. The US and UK units must begin their activation on a British airfield or US carrier to make a nuclear Bombing attack. The Bombing value of ATK units performing nuclear Bombing attacks is enhanced in the same manner as for SSM's (see above). For each unit that makes a nuclear Bombing attack, the owning player checks off one BOMB box in the Air Unit Nuclear Attacks section of the Logistics Roster. Nuclear Bombing attacks cannot be made against airfields and ports.

ASW: Surface, submarine, and air units making nuclear ASW attacks have their ASW values multiplied by *three*. This en-

hancement is not allowed in defensive combat against Torpedo attack. Among air units, only US, UK, and Soviet RCN air units can make nuclear ASW attacks; if they do so, the owning player checks off one ASW box for each attacking unit in the Air Unit Nuclear Attacks section of the Logistics Roster. Surface units are not affected by a nuclear ASW attack that occurs in the hex they occupy.

Area Anti-Air: If a surface unit uses nuclear Anti-Air weapons in defensive combat against SSM or Bombing attacks, its Area Anti-Air value is multiplied by *three*.

21.3 FIRST USE OF NUCLEAR WEAPONS

The player who first uses nuclear weapons is penalized. If the Soviet player uses nuclear weapons first, he loses 60 Victory Points; if the NATO player uses nuclear weapons first, the Soviet player gains 70 Victory Points (in addition, the Soviet strategy is escalated; see 27.0 and 28.0). Also, if the NATO player is the first to use nuclear weapons, all Dutch (NE) units are immediately removed from the game (they are not considered eliminated). Once a player has used nuclear weapons, both players can freely use them for the rest of the game.

The first use of nuclear weapons is subject to the following restrictions:

1. Neither player can use them for the first three Game Turns of the game.
2. If neither player has used nuclear weapons and the Armistice marker has advanced into the "Negotiations Progress" box on the Armistice Track, neither player can use them for the rest of the game. However, if one player has used nuclear weapons before the Armistice marker reaches this box, both players can freely use them for the rest of the game.

22.0 Deep Mode (Optional)

"I am tired and sick of war. Its glory is all moonshine. It is only those who have neither fired a shot nor heard the shrieks and groans of the wounded who cry aloud for blood, more vengeance, more desolation. War is hell."

— General William T. Sherman

If the players agree to this option, some submarines can enter a special mode called "deep mode."



22.1 HOW TO ENTER DEEP MODE

During the Submarine Mode Phase, which occurs in the Strategic Cycle of AM Game Turns, first the Soviet player and then the NATO player can place Deep markers on any or all of their submarines whose Movement Allowance is two or more. During this phase, the players can also remove Deep markers from their submarines. When a submarine enters Deep mode, it must remain in this mode for the next three Game Turns (AM, PM, and Night); the marker cannot be removed from it until the next Submarine Mode phase.

NOTABLE EXCEPTION: A submarine cannot enter Deep mode in a coastal or pack ice hex.

22.2 EFFECTS OF DEEP MODE

Submarines in Deep mode operate normally with the following exceptions:

Movement: The Movement Allowance of all submarines in Deep mode is one. Submarines in Deep mode cannot move at full speed (see 5.3). Submarines in Deep mode cannot enter coastal or pack ice hexes.

Combat: If a submarine in Deep mode is attacked by ASW Combat, the attacker subtracts *one* from his attack die roll. Submarines in Deep mode can perform ASW Combat normally. Submarines in Deep mode perform Torpedo Combat normally, but their Torpedo values are *halved* (round fractions down); they cannot perform SSM Combat while in Deep mode.

Detection: Submarines in Deep mode are detected normally in the Local Detection Phase (see 9.2). However, anytime a detection attempt is made against a submarine in Deep mode by referring to the Submarine Detection Table (by a Reconnaissance strategic mission or by SOSUS), *two* is added to the detection die roll when consulting the table (except in sub-oceanic mountain hexes; see below). If a submarine in Deep mode is detected, place the appropriate Detection marker directly on top of the submarine's Deep mode marker.

Sub-Oceanic Mountain Hexes: There are a number of sub-oceanic mountain hexes on the map. If a submarine in Deep mode occupies a sub-oceanic mountain hex and a detection attempt is made against that submarine on the Submarine Detection Table, *four* (not two) is added to the detection attempt die roll.

23.0 Mines (Optional)

"Wars are not won by big armies but by good ones."

— Marshal Saxe

If players agree to this option, they can add Mining to the other strategic missions that air units can perform in the Strategic Air Phase (see 7.0).

MINE



23.1 MINE PLACEMENT

There are two methods of placing mines on the map: by strategic missions or by Soviet submarines.

Mining Missions: Each air unit on a strategic Mining mission can place a single Mine marker in any *coastal* hex (including fiords and ports, but not including hexes containing islands only) within the zone in which the mission is taking place. This placement takes place during the Mine Segment of the Strategic Air Phase (Soviet player first, NATO player second). Once an air unit places a mine, it is placed in the appropriate "Return to Base" box on the Strategic Air Display (see 7.5). Air units on Mining missions are "bounced" normally by enemy Interception air units.

Soviet Submarines: Soviet submarines have the capability to lay mines, but only when using the Logistics option (see 20.0). During the Mine Segment of the Strategic Cycle, the Soviet player can place a single Mine marker in any coastal hex adjacent to a Soviet submarine. To do so, the Soviet player checks off three TORP boxes on the Logistics Roster for that submarine. (If the submarine has less than three boxes remaining, it cannot place mines.)

Mine Limitations: The number of Mine markers (10) provided in the game is a strict limit. If all Mine markers are on the map, no more can be placed. However, as mines are removed (see 23.3), they again become available for use by either player. A maximum of *four* Mine markers can be placed in one hex.

23.2 EFFECTS OF MINES

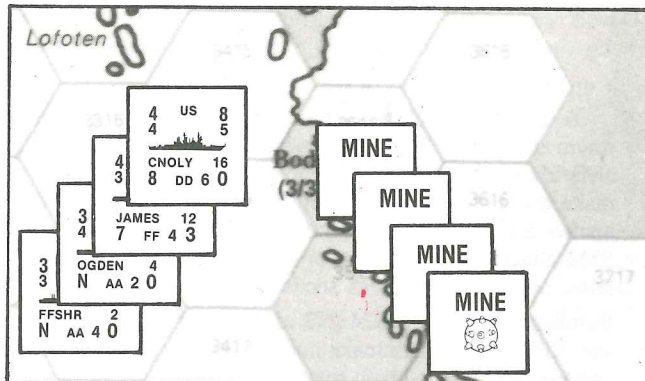
Mine markers are neutral; they affect both players no matter who placed them. Units can enter mine hexes with no detrimental effect. However, at the moment an active surface unit (or stack) or submarine *exits* a mine hex, the movement of that unit is temporarily halted while the mine effects are resolved.

The player controlling the active force rolls one die and compares the result with the number of Mine markers in the hex. If the die roll is *greater* than the number of Mine markers, the mines have no effect and the active force resumes its movement. If the die roll is *less than or equal to* the number of Mine markers, one or more of the active units is damaged.

Damage: If damage results from mines, determine the difference between the die roll result and the number of Mine markers in the hex; the difference is the number of active units damaged by mines (if the die roll was *equal* to the number of Mine markers, one active unit is damaged). If the difference between the die roll and the number of mines is greater than the number of active units in the force, each unit in the force is damaged and the extra damage is ignored. (Damaged units that suffer additional damage from mines are sunk.) If a hex contains

damaged and undamaged units, the undamaged units must take damage from mines before any damaged units are affected. A unit can be damaged a maximum of once per Action Segment by mines.

If a force containing more than one surface unit is damaged by mines, a die is rolled to determine which units are damaged. On a result of 0-5, the owning player assigns damage to his units as he wishes; on a die roll of 6-9, the enemy player decides which units will suffer damage.



Example of Mine Damage: A NATO force consisting of the undamaged US Cnoly, (DD), James (FF), and Ogdan (AA), and the damaged FFshr (AA) is in Bodo, and four Mine markers occupy the hex (the maximum allowed in a hex). The NATO player activates the hex (the maximum allowed in a hex). The NATO player activates the force and decides to move it; he must immediately roll the die to see if any damage is inflicted. He rolls a "2," which is two less than the number of Mine markers in the hex. Two of his units must suffer damage. He rolls the die again and gets a "7," which means that the Soviet player has his choice of which units will be damaged. The Soviet player selects Cnoly and Ogdan, and these two units are flipped to their damaged side. The Soviet player cannot select FFshr because undamaged units must be selected first.

If the US player had received a "0" on his first die roll, which is four less than the number of mines in the hex, each of the US units would have been damaged (no second die roll would have been necessary). In this case, FFshr would have been sunk upon receiving its second damage result.

23.3 MINESWEEPING

Mines stay in a hex until removed by minesweeping. During the Minesweeping Phase, either player rolls the die once for each hex on the map containing mines. Depending on where the coastal hex is, a single Mine marker is removed if the player gets a die roll result as indicated on the following chart:

LOCATION OF COASTAL HEX	DIE ROLL RESULT TO REMOVE MINE
Soviet Union	0, 1, 2
Great Britain	0, 1
Any other coastal hex	0

US Aerial Minesweeping: If mines occupy an Icelandic or Norwegian coastal hex and a US aircraft carrier or amphibious assault unit is situated within *ten* hexes of the mined hex, the NATO player can specify that the minesweeping die roll applied to that hex is *aerial minesweeping*. If so, a single Mine marker is removed on a die roll of 0 or 1. A maximum of one aerial minesweeping attempt can be made per Minesweeping Phase. If the NATO player performs an aerial minesweeping attempt in a hex, he cannot then make a regular minesweeping attempt in the same phase.

24.0 Optional Rules

"The necessity of a navy, in the restricted sense of the word, springs from the existence of a peaceful shipping, and disappears with it, except in the case of a nation which has aggressive tendencies, and keeps up a navy merely as a branch of the military establishment."

— Alfred Thayer Mahan

The following optional rules can be used selectively upon mutual consent of the players.

24.1 CRUISE MISSILES

Both the US and Soviet Navies have land-attack cruise missiles in their inventories. The US version is the strategic variant of the *Tomahawk* (BGM-109F); the Soviet version is the SSN-21.

4 US 8 5 SCLNA 12 2 CG 5 5	4 US 8 5 SPNCE 12 5 DD 6 0	4 US 8 9 IOWA 30 N BB 4 0	3 US 18 7 GROTN 22 9 SN N	3 SO 22 7 VOLGA 18 6 SN N
-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	------------------------------------	------------------------------------	------------------------------------

Cruise Missile-Equipped Units: All US surface and submarine units with an SSM Range of 5 are *Tomahawk*-equipped. All Soviet submarine units with an SSM Range of 6 are SSN-21-equipped. Each of these units can make *one* cruise missile attack per game. A cruise missile attack uses the procedure for SSM Combat, and an SSM box is checked off after the attack. Players should keep track of cruise missile attacks on their Player Records, since each unit can perform only one attack per game.

Cruise Missile Attacks: Cruise missile attacks can be used only against enemy ports and airfields. These attacks use the procedure for SSM Combat, and the Close Anti-Air value (and CAP, if any) can be used by the base in defense (see 14.1). However, the attacker does *not* subtract four from his attack die roll as he normally would do in an SSM attack against a base. Also, unlike an SSM attack, cruise missiles can transit land hexsides.

The SSM Range/Attack Value of a cruise missile attack is 25/60 (25/40 if the attacking unit is damaged). A cruise missile attack cannot be used in conjunction with normal SSM attacks (including intensive and maximum attacks), and a unit can use its cruise missile values *or* its normal SSM values in an Action Phase, never both. Cruise missiles can never be replenished.

160 US 50 4 B1 N ATK 1

24.2 THE US B-1 AIR UNIT

At the beginning of every Reinforcement Phase, the NATO player rolls the die (this roll is in addition to his normal reinforcement die roll; see 26.1). On the first die roll of 0, he places the US B-1 ATK air unit on the Keflavik airfield (hex 1831). The NATO player can use the B-1 as a normal air unit for the rest of the game. However, it must begin and end every Action Phase in Keflavik. If Keflavik is controlled by the Soviet player (see 18.5), the B1 is destroyed; it is not allowed to relocate (see 18.1).

24.3 ALTERNATE AIR WINGS ON US AIRCRAFT CARRIERS

In 1983, the US Navy initiated tests of non-standard air wings onboard its aircraft carriers. USS *John F. Kennedy*

(CV-67) was the first carrier to conduct these tests. *Kennedy's* mission was to evaluate the effectiveness of a "heavy" wing in which no A-7 *Corsair* or F-18 *Hornet* aircraft were deployed, their place being taken by a second squadron of A-6 *Intruders*.

Using this option, the NATO player can have any US CV deploy a heavy wing. Once this decision is made, it cannot be changed for the duration of the game. Remove two F18 air units from the carrier and add a second A6 air unit (this extra counter is not included in the game, so the NATO player will have to make his own). Thus, the carrier would have two F14's (or two F18's in the case of *Coral Sea*), two A6's, and the normal complement of support aircraft.

4 US 8 4 BURKE 16 1 DD 5 7	4 SO 14 8 KRMLN 14 5 CV 6 4	24 SO N S27 30 N INT 10	N 30 10	8 SO N HLX N N AEW 1
-------------------------------------	--------------------------------------	-------------------------------	---------------	----------------------------

24.4 FUTURE COMBATANTS

The US *Burke* (DD) and the Soviet *Krmln* CV are not used in any scenarios because they are not expected to be in service until 1990. However, if both players agree, they can use these units in place of a friendly unit of the same type. If the Soviet player uses *Krmln*, he receives three S27 INT and one HLX AEW air units, which are deployed onboard the carrier.

24.5 SOVIET "TATTLETALES"

In peacetime, the Soviet Navy keeps a sharp look-out on NATO warships with "tattletales" (small intelligence vessels). To reflect this tactic, all NATO surface units are automatically detected throughout the first three Game Turns of the game.

24.6 HIGH SPEEDS

Any US, Soviet, or West German battleship (BB), aircraft carrier (CV), cruiser (CG or CL), or destroyer (DD) is allowed to increase its Movement Allowance by *one* during its active status. However, the owning player must immediately check off one Fuel box for that unit on the Logistics Roster. This check mark is in addition to the one placed in the Fuel Phase.

24.7 INCREASED MOVEMENT FOR AIR UNITS

Extended Range: During the active status of any INT, ATK, or EW air unit, the owning player can state that he is using his air unit at "extended range" (that is, sacrificing attack capability for extra fuel). If this option is used, the Movement Allowance of the air unit is increased by *eight*. However, the Bombing, Anti-Air, and SSM Attack values of the air unit are *halved* (round fractions up).

Mid-Air Refueling: The Soviet and NATO players can each declare one mid-air refueling per *day* (AM, PM, and Night Game Turns). Only an INT, ATK, or EW air unit (or stack of such units) is eligible to use mid-air refueling; moreover, it can use this option only if, for the *first 10 hexes* it moves during its activation, it does not enter a hex that is within 10 hexes of an enemy INT or ATK air unit. The Movement Allowance of units using mid-air refueling is increased by *eight*. If the units are also operating at extended range, their Movement Allowances are increased by 16.

24.8 VARIABLE SSM TARGETING

When using this option, a player making an SSM attack against a stack of enemy surface units does not freely choose the enemy units that will be the targets of the attack (see 10.4). When the attacker is about to choose enemy ships within the hex as targets, he rolls the die. On an odd die roll, he can choose

targets normally; on an even die roll (including "0"), he is restricted in the targets he can choose. Use the following chart to determine what units are chosen for targets:

EVEN DIE ROLL	TARGETS THAT CAN BE CHOSEN
0	The defender chooses one surface unit in his stack as the <i>only</i> target of the SSM attack.
2, 4	The attacker can choose surface units only from the top half of the target stack (rounding fractions down).
6, 8	The attacker can choose surface units only from the bottom half of the target stack (rounding fractions up).

24.9 CLOSE COMBAT

5	SO	4
3		1
KKRYM		
1	DD	2

● CLOSE COMBAT VALUE

If a player declares an SSM attack against an enemy surface unit (or stack) at a *one-hex range*, he can declare the Close Combat option. Using this option, the SSM attack will be increased in strength, but the enemy units will be able to respond, even though they are inactive.

Close Combat Restrictions: Only an active surface unit (or stack) can use the Close Combat option, and the enemy targets must be in an adjacent hex (not separated by a land hexside). Submarines and air units cannot perform Close Combat. The Close Combat option cannot be used against bases. Close

Combat and ASW Combat can be used by the same units in a given Action Segment, but not Close Combat and SSM Combat in the same segment.

How to Execute Close Combat: All surface combat units have a Close Combat value, which is simply an enhanced SSM value taking into account close-range weapons, such as guns and helicopter-mounted weapons. If a Close Combat is declared during an SSM attack, two SSM combats are subsequently resolved: one for the active player and one for the inactive player. These SSM attacks are resolved normally, except that both players use the Close Combat values instead of the SSM values.

As soon as Close Combat is declared, the attacker rolls the die. If the die roll is odd, the active player executes his SSM attack first, using Close Combat values in place of SSM values; if the die roll is even, the inactive player goes first. After a player resolves the first attack, the opposing player can immediately make a Close Combat attack, assuming any of his units survived.

Damage inflicted in Close Combat is applied immediately. Close Combat expends SSM ammunition normally. A player is permitted to use intensive and maximum attacks in Close Combat (see 20.2); if he does so, his units' Close Combat values are enhanced, not their SSM values.

Terminating Close Combat: As soon as the second SSM attack in Close Combat occurs, the combat is over and the active unit (or stack) can resume its activities. The status of inactive units that participated in Close Combat is not affected; as long as they did not activate earlier in the Action Phase, they can become active normally — even though they participated in this combat.

25.0 Political and Random Events

"That the political point of view should end completely when war begins is only conceivable in contests which are wars of life and death, from pure hatred . . . The subordination of the political point of view to the military would be contrary to common sense, for politics has declared the war."

— Karl von Clausewitz

The Advanced Game lasts until an armistice or until the end of the 36th Game Turn, whichever comes first.

25.1 ARMISTICE

At the beginning of the game, the Armistice marker is placed in the "Start" box on the Armistice Track. It may be moved along the track during the Political Events Phase. When it reaches the Armistice box, the game immediately ends and victory is determined.

Armistice Table: During the Political Events Phase of the Strategic Cycle, the NATO player rolls a die and both players consult the Armistice Table. If the result calls for the Armistice marker to be advanced a space, this should be done immediately. The table may call for the players to consult the Random Events Table (see 25.2).

Depending on the length of the scenario (short or long; see 28.0), the die roll on the Armistice Table is modified. In games of short length, add 1 to the die roll; in games of long length, no modifier is made to the roll.

Player do *not* consult the Armistice Table on Game Turn 1.

Victory Points: When the Armistice marker is moved along the Armistice Track, the Soviet player may receive Victory Points (see 28.0).

25.2 RANDOM EVENTS

If the Armistice Table calls for the players to consult the Random Events Table, the NATO player rolls a die and the players consult the table to determine the result. There are five possible results, which are explained below:

UN Talks Collapse: Subtract 1 from all Armistice Table die rolls for the remainder of the game. (Ignore this result if it has occurred earlier in the game.)

UN Breakthrough: Add 1 to all Armistice Table die rolls for the remainder of the game. This addition is cumulative with other modifiers. (Ignore this result if it has occurred earlier in the game.)

Command Failure: Roll the die again. On an odd roll, the command failure applies to the Soviet player; on an even roll (including "0"), command failure applies to the NATO player. The affected player rolls the die and consults the Zone Table; in the ensuing Strategic Air Phase, he cannot perform any strategic missions in the indicated zones. Air units in the affected zones can perform strategic missions, but not in the zones that they occupy.

Norwegian Base Falls: Banak airfield (3308) is captured by Soviet overland ground attack. If Banak is currently Soviet-controlled or it has been captured earlier due to an earlier Random Event result, the port of Tromsø (3311) is taken by Soviet ground attack. If Tromsø is currently Soviet-controlled or it has been captured earlier, then Bardufoss airfield (3411) is taken by Soviet ground forces. Note that Soviet Ground Force markers do *not* have to occupy the above hexes for them to be captured. A Destroyed marker is placed on a captured Norwegian airfield and all NATO air units on that airfield are immediately eliminated (they may not relocate; see 18.1); NATO CAP units are eliminated during the CAP Landing Phase. Surface and submarine units are not affected. The Soviet player controls the captured base for the remainder of the game, regardless of the presence of NATO Ground Force markers,

and he gains Victory Points for the base normally (see 18.5). Any Ground Force markers already in the hex remain, but they have no effect. The NATO player can never regain control of these bases.

Consult Special Events Table: The players must consult the Special Events Table (see 25.3).

25.3 SPECIAL EVENTS

If the Random Events Table calls for the players to consult the Special Events Table, the NATO player rolls a die and the players consult this table to determine a result. There are six possible results, which are described below:

NATO Break-up: The NATO player rolls the die again to determine which NATO ally withdraws from the war:

DIE ROLL	COUNTRY
0	United Kingdom
1	Canada and West Germany
2-5	Norway
6-9	Netherlands

The NATO player removes all of the affected country's surface, submarine, and air units (not Ground Force markers) from the map. In addition, the NATO player does not receive reinforcements for that country for the rest of the game. Bases within the affected country can still be invaded; their Intrinsic Defense and Close Anti-Air values are still functional. Control of such bases must be determined normally. However, ports and airfields within the affected country cannot be used for replenishment or activation of air units. Units removed from the map due to this result are not considered eliminated for Victory Point purposes. *Optional Rule:* Players can agree before starting play to allow either the United Kingdom or Norway, but not both, to withdraw.

Accident: The NATO player rolls the die again to determine

the affected player. On an odd roll, the accident applies to the Soviet player; on an even roll (including "0"), the accident applies to the NATO player. The player who is *not* affected by the accident must now choose any *single* undamaged CG, CL, DD, or FF unit (not in a port) belonging to the enemy player; the chosen unit has suffered an accident and is damaged. If there are no eligible units to choose from, the accident has no effect.

Submarine Accident: The NATO player rolls the die again to determine the affected player as described above. The affected player must choose a *single* submarine, damaged or undamaged, that he controls. The chosen submarine has suffered an accident and is sunk; it is considered eliminated for Victory Point purposes. The submarine selected must occupy a sub-oceanic mountain hex if possible; if there are no friendly submarines in these hexes, it can be chosen from any of those on the map. If there are no submarines on the map, this result has no effect.

Reinforcements Enhanced: The NATO player rolls the die again to determine the affected player as described above. The affected player adds 3 to his Reinforcement Table die rolls for the remainder of the game (see 26.0). This result has no effect if it happened earlier in the game to the same player.

Example: *The NATO player receives this enhancement on Game Turn 4. On Game Turn 10, this special event occurs again. If the second die roll is even, there is no effect (the NATO player cannot receive the benefit again). If the second roll is odd, then the Soviet player gets the enhancement.*

Reinforcements Delayed: The NATO player rolls the die again to determine the affected player as described above. The affected player does not roll for reinforcements during the Reinforcement Phase of the current Strategic Cycle and the Reinforcement Phase of the *next* Strategic Cycle (three Game Turns from now). This event can happen a number of times in a game to the same player.

Automatic Escalation: The Soviet strategy is automatically escalated by one box to the maximum allowed (see 27.0).

26.0 Reinforcements

"Something must be left to chance; nothing is sure in a sea fight beyond all others."

— Admiral Horatio Nelson

Each player has a Reinforcement Track which records the status of his reinforcements. Depending on the scenario's Preparedness Level (see 28.0), a player's Reinforcement marker begins the game in a different box on his Reinforcement Track. As a player's Reinforcement marker advances, he receives reinforcements.

26.1 AVAILABILITY OF REINFORCEMENTS

During the Reinforcement Phase of the Strategic Cycle, starting with Game Turn 4, both players roll the die and consult the Reinforcement Table. Each player's die roll is cross-referenced with his column. The result will be a number; this is the number of boxes that the player's Reinforcement marker advances on his Reinforcement Track. For example, if a player's Reinforcement marker occupies the 13 box and a 7 result is obtained on the Reinforcement Table, the marker is advanced to the 20 box.

The Reinforcement Charts: Each player has a Reinforcement Chart printed on the Deployment/Reinforcement Cards. The chart is a series of consecutively numbered groups, each numbered group corresponding to a box on the player's Reinforcement Track. When the Reinforcement marker advances, a player receives the reinforcement groups corresponding to the boxes through which the Reinforcement marker moved and including the box in which the marker ends. For example, if the Reinforcement marker advanced from box 23 to box 30, the player receives reinforcement groups 24 through 30 (inclusive).

Note that on the Reinforcement Charts replenishment units (AM, CS, ST, TK) are printed in *italics*. These units do *not*

come in as reinforcements unless the Logistics option is being used (see 20.0).

Special Events Table: The Special Events Table may call for a die roll addition to a player's Reinforcement Table die rolls. Also, it may prohibit a player from consulting the table for a certain period of play (see 25.3).

26.2 PLACEMENT OF REINFORCEMENTS

When reinforcements are made available to a player, he consults his Reinforcement Chart to determine the exact units he receives. Each reinforcement group consists of one or more units, specified by name, type, and (for the NATO player) country. Each group also has a placement hex or locale indicated for it. Subject to the limitations listed below, these reinforcements are immediately placed on the map. Note that Parachute reinforcements are simply placed aside for later use (see 28.3).

Placement Restrictions: Surface and air unit reinforcements can be placed on the map in violation of stacking restrictions, but they must adhere to these restrictions at the end of the ensuing Action Phase. If an airfield at which an air unit reinforcement arrives is destroyed or controlled by the enemy player, it can be placed in any friendly airfield on the map. If the port at which NATO surface or submarine reinforcements arrive is controlled by the Soviet player, the reinforcements are not available for the rest of the game. If a non-base arrival hex is enemy-occupied, the reinforcements can be placed in any empty or friendly-occupied mapedge hex within four hexes of the original arrival hex.

Special US Reinforcements: Immediately before NATO reinforcement group 35 is placed on the map, the NATO player must roll the die. On an even die roll, the NATO player receives the US CV *Inpdr* (plus its assigned air units); on an odd die roll, he receives the US BB *Iowa*. The NATO player receives one or the other of these units, not both.

27.0 Soviet Strategy

"One of the Navy's main tasks will be to sever the enemy's ocean and sea transport routes. Eighty to one hundred large transports would arrive daily at European ports in time of war. Operations against enemy sea lines of communication should be developed on a large scale."

— Marshal Sokolovskiy

At the start of the game, the Soviet player must choose a strategy. He has four choices: Defensive, Restricted, Unrestricted, and World War 3. The Soviet player places the Soviet Original ("Orig") Strategy marker in the box corresponding to his strategy on the Soviet Strategy Track.

27.1 EFFECTS OF SOVIET STRATEGY

Soviet strategy has two effects:

Invasion of NATO Bases: The current Soviet strategy determines the NATO bases that the Soviet player can invade (see 18.1). Listed under each box of the Soviet Strategy Track are the names of bases that can be invaded at that Soviet strategy level. For example, with an Unrestricted strategy, the Soviet player can invade Hofn and Bodo, but not Wick.

Victory Conditions: Victory conditions depend on the *original* (not current) Soviet strategy (see 28.6).

27.2 ESCALATION

By means of escalation, the Soviet strategy can progress on the Soviet Strategy Track. The Soviet player does not choose escalation voluntarily; escalation takes place only due to special events or NATO actions. If escalation does occur, place the Soviet Current ("Curr") Strategy marker in the box to which the strategy has escalated; the Original Strategy marker remains in place. The *current* strategy determines the NATO bases the Soviet player can invade.

The highest strategy is "World War 3." If the Current Strategy marker reaches this box, no further escalation can occur, although the NATO player can perform actions that would normally cause escalation (see below).

The Soviet strategy escalates based on these conditions:

- **Special Events:** Due to the "Automatic Escalation" result on the Special Events Table, the Soviet strategy escalates one box (see 25.3).
- **Nuclear Weapons:** If the NATO player is the first to use nuclear weapons, the Soviet strategy escalates one box (see 21.0). In addition, the Soviet player receives Victory Points (see 28.5).
- **Soviet Bases:** The first time the NATO player attacks a Soviet port or airfield, the Soviet strategy escalates one box. This occurs only once per game. Also, the Soviet player receives Victory Points (see 28.5).
- **Soviet SB's:** The first time the NATO player attacks a Soviet SB submarine, the Soviet strategy escalates one box. This occurs only once per game, whether the SB is damaged or not. The Soviet player also receives Victory Points (see 28.5).

28.0 Advanced Game Scenario

"In war, nothing is impossible, providing you use audacity."

— General George S. Patton

There is only one Advanced Scenario, but it can be played in many different ways. To begin the Advanced Scenario, follow the procedure outlined below:

1. **Choose Sides:** One side must be the NATO player and the other must be the Soviet player. The NATO player controls all non-Soviet units.
2. **Soviet Strategy:** The Soviet player must select his original strategy (see 27.0).
3. **Time of Year:** The players must agree to the time of year at which the scenario will take place (see 16.0).
4. **Game Length:** The players must agree upon game length (see 28.1).
5. **Preparedness Level:** The player must agree upon a Preparedness Level (see 28.2).
6. **Deploy:** The players deploy their units on the map (see 28.3). In addition, each player's Reinforcement marker is placed in the appropriate box on his Reinforcement Track (see 26.0).
7. **Begin Game:** Place the Game Turn marker in the first space on the Game Turn Track. Place the Armistice marker in the "At Start" box on the Armistice Track. Begin Game Turn 1.

28.1 GAME LENGTH

Depending on how much time the players wish to devote to a game, they can make the Advanced Game *short* or *long*. In games of short length, one is added to the Armistice Table die rolls (see 25.1); in games of long length, there is no modification to the die roll.

The game lasts until the Armistice marker reaches the "Armistice" box or until the end of the 36th Game Turn, whichever comes first.

28.2 PREPAREDNESS LEVELS

At the start of the game, the players must agree upon one of three Preparedness Levels: Low, Moderate, or High. The Preparedness Level determines the number of units available to the player at the start of the game.

28.3 DEPLOYMENT

After selecting a Preparedness Level, the players must deploy their units on the map as per the instructions on their Deployment Charts (on the Deployment/Reinforcement Cards). Note that at Preparedness Level Moderate, the players deploy the units listed under this heading in addition to the units listed under Preparedness Level Low; at Preparedness Level High, all units at all Preparedness Levels are deployed. Deployment is performed as follows:

1. Each player determines the number of Commando markers he has available. The die is rolled and the result is the number of Commando markers the player receives; only one die roll is made no matter what the Preparedness Level. Commando markers are placed aside (see 18.4).
2. Each player locates the Parachute markers made available to him. At Preparedness Level Low, the Soviet player receives 9 Parachute markers and the NATO player 3; at Preparedness Level Moderate, the Soviet player receives 12

markers and the NATO player 6; at Preparedness Level High, the Soviet player receives 15 markers and the NATO player 9. Parachute markers are placed aside (see 18.3).

3. Each player deploys his *rigid* set-up units on the map. Set-up hexes for these units are printed on the Deployment Chart.
4. The players perform the *free* set-up procedure (see below).

Note: Replenishment units are printed in *italics* on the Deployment Chart. These units are deployed only if the Logistics option (see 20.0) is being used.

Free Set-up Procedure: In all Preparedness Levels, each player has "free set-up" units. Free set-up units are either individual submarines or numbered *groups* of surface units. All free set-up units are provided with specific deployment instructions, although when they are placed on the map, they must adhere to the free set-up instructions (see below). The free set-up procedure is performed as follows:

1. The NATO player rolls the die. On an even result (including "0"), the NATO player can deploy either *one* of his free set-up submarines or one surface group. On an odd result, the Soviet player deploys one free set-up submarine or one surface group.
2. The players alternate rolling the die indefinitely to determine which player deploys a free set-up submarine or surface group. When one player has no more free set-up units, no more die rolls are made and the player with remaining free set-up units deploys them all on the map.

Free Set-up Restrictions: When free set-up units are deployed on the map, they are subject to these placement restrictions:

- They cannot be deployed in or adjacent to any base hex;
- They cannot be deployed in or adjacent to any hex containing enemy units;
- Submarines must be deployed individually in hexes, and they cannot be in or adjacent to a hex containing friendly units;
- All units in a surface group must be deployed in the same hex.

Task Group/Force Markers: Once all units are deployed on the map, both players can place Task Group/Force markers on their stacks of surface units on the map. Each player can place as many markers as he wishes as long as the restrictions of 6.2 are observed.

Optional Deployment: In order to facilitate the set-up and to allow players to experiment with the capabilities of their units, the players can decide before starting play to ignore the names of units in deployment instructions and instead select any unit of the same *type* and *nationality* for set-up in the indicated hex or location.

28.4 NATO FIRST GAME TURN RESTRICTIONS

In the first Game Turn of an Advanced Scenario, Air-to-Air Combat in the Strategic Air Phase is the only kind of combat that NATO units can freely initiate. During the Action Phase, no NATO unit can attack before at least one Soviet attack has taken place. Starting with Game Turn 2, there are no restrictions on combat initiation by either player.

28.5 VICTORY CONDITIONS

Only the Soviet player gains and loses Victory Points (VP). There are eight ways for the Soviet player to gain VP:

1. NATO first use of nuclear weapons (see 27.2);
2. NATO first attack on a Soviet port or airfield (see 27.2);
3. NATO first attack on a Soviet SB submarine (see 27.2);
4. Soviet control of NATO bases;
5. Soviet sea denial;

6. Soviet CR units in NATO bases;
7. Soviet SB's surviving at the end of the game;
8. Soviet destruction of NATO units.

The Soviet player loses VP for the following three reasons:

1. Soviet first use of nuclear weapons;
2. NATO CR units in NATO bases;
3. NATO destruction of Soviet units.

Gaining VP: The first time the NATO player performs any of the following actions, the Soviet player gains the indicated number of VP:

NATO ACTION	VP GAIN
First use of nuclear weapons	70
First attack of Soviet port or airfield	15
First attack on Soviet SB submarine	15

Whenever the Armistice marker advances to a new box on the Armistice Track or at the end of Game Turn 36, the Soviet player receives VP for the following reasons:

- **Controlling NATO Bases:** The Soviet player consults the NATO Bases Victory Point Chart for each NATO base he currently controls (see 18.5). The Soviet player continues to gain VP for controlled NATO hexes each time the Armistice marker advances. If the game concludes at the end of Game Turn 36, the Soviet player also gains VP for controlling NATO bases. The VP value of that base is enhanced depending on which box the Armistice marker has just advanced into:

ARMISTICE MARKER ADVANCES INTO	VP VALUE OF BASE MULTIPLE
Negotiations Begin Box	×1
Negotiations Progress Box	×2
Armistice Box or end of game	×3

Example: The Soviet player controls *Vago* when the Armistice marker advances from the "Start" box to the "Negotiations Begin" box. The Soviet player checks the NATO Bases Victory Point Chart and sees that *Vago* is worth 2 VP, which multiplied by 1 results in the Soviet player receiving 2 VP. Later, the Armistice marker advances into the "Negotiations Progress" box; the Soviet player now receives 4 VP for controlling *Vago*. Assuming he controls the base when the Armistice marker moves into the "Armistice" box (ending the game) or at the end of Game Turn 36, he would gain 6 VP.

- **Sea Denial:** The Soviet player receives a variable number of VP when the Armistice marker advances for each SS, SN, or Task Force (not Task Groups) in the Labrador Sea, North Atlantic, British Isles, or Norwegian Sea Zones. The Soviet player receives these VP each time the Armistice marker advances or when the game ends (either because the "Armistice" box is reached or Game Turn 36 ends).

ZONE OCCUPIED BY SOVIET SUBMARINE/TASK FORCE	NUMBER OF VP GAINED
Labrador Sea Zone	4
North Atlantic Zone, British Isles Zone	3
Norwegian Sea Zone	2

Example: The Soviet player has one SS in the Labrador Sea Zone, one Task Force in the British Isles Zone, and one SN in the Norwegian Sea Zone when the Armistice marker moves into the "Negotiations Begin" box. The Soviet player immediately receives 4 VP for the SS, 3 VP for the Task Force, and 2 VP for the SN, for a total of 9 VP. When the Armistice marker in a later turn advances into the "Negotiations Progress" box, the Soviet player has an SN in the Labrador Sea Zone, an SS and an SN in the North Atlantic Zone, and a Task Force in the Norwegian Sea Zone; thus, he receives 12 VP (4+3+3+2=12). The Soviet player receives more VP for sea denial when the "Armistice" box is reached or at the end of Game Turn 36.

The Soviet player receives additional VP for the following reasons:

- **Soviet SB Units:** Depending on the current strategy, the Soviet player receives a variable number of VP for each Soviet SB submarine that ends the game in any sea, drift ice, or pack ice hex on the map except in the Barents Sea Zone:

CURRENT STRATEGY	VP FOR EACH SB
Defensive	0
Restricted	1
Unrestricted	3
World War 3	6

- **Cargo Units:** Soviet CR's are permitted to end their movement in a Soviet-controlled NATO port or airfield if there are no NATO surface or submarine units in the hex (see 18.5). The Soviet player receives VP for each Soviet CR unit that reaches and "unloads" in a Soviet-controlled NATO port or airfield (including bases that are destroyed). As soon as a CR unit enters the NATO port or airfield, it is flipped over to its "Unloaded" side and is removed from the map and placed aside. The Soviet player immediately notes down the VP he receives on his Player Record. A maximum of two Soviet CR's can unload in the same NATO base; once unloaded, the CR unit cannot be activated again nor can it be attacked. The Soviet player receives a variable number of VP depending on the zone in which the NATO base is located:

ZONE OF NATO PORT/AIRFIELD	NUMBER OF VP GAINED
Barents Sea Zone	7
Any other zone	10

Example: The Soviet player has one CR unit unloaded in Tromsø (3311) in the Barents Sea Zone, and two CR's unloaded in Bodo (3516) and one CR unloaded in Orland (3720) in the Norwegian Sea Zone, all of which are controlled by the Soviet player. The Soviet player receives 7 VP for the unit in Tromsø and 10 VP for the rest of the units, for a total of 37 VP (7+10+10+10=37).

- **Destroying NATO Units:** The Soviet player receives the following VP for each NATO unit destroyed:

DESTROYED UNIT	NUMBER OF VP GAINED
US CV	25
BB	18
UK CV	10
AA (before invasion), CG, SN	8
DD	6
FF, SS, AM, ST, TK, CS	4
INT or ATK air unit	4
AA (after invasion)	2
PC	1
CR	0

Losing VP: The Soviet player immediately loses 60 VP if he is the first player to use nuclear weapons. The Soviet player also loses VP at the end of the game for the following reasons:

- **NATO CR Units:** The Soviet player loses a variable number of VP for each NATO CR unit that reaches a NATO-controlled port. Once the unit reaches the port, the NATO CR is immediately flipped over to its "Unloaded" side and is removed from the map, and the NATO player notes down on his Player Record the port where the unit unloaded. A CR unit cannot be attacked once it has been removed nor can it be activated for the rest of the game. Any number of NATO CR units can be unloaded in a given NATO-controlled port. The Soviet player still loses VP for the unloaded CR units even if he later gains control of the NATO port. The Soviet VP loss for NATO CR units is as follows:

NATO PORT (HEX)	NUMBER OF VP LOST
Tromsø (3311)	12
Narvik (3412)	12
Trondheim (3721)	10
Bergen (3926)	8
Rosyth (3834)	6
Holy Loch/Faslane (3736)	6
Reykjavik (1830)	3

- **Destroyed Soviet Units:** The Soviet player loses VP for the following units when they are destroyed:

DESTROYED UNIT	NUMBER OF VP LOST
CV	10
AA (before invasion), CG, SN	8
DD, CL	6
FF, SS, AM, ST, TK, CS	4
INT or ATK air unit	4
AA (after invasion)	2
CR, SB	0

Recording VP: The Soviet player should record his VP gains on his Player Record as they occur. The NATO player records Soviet VP losses on his Player Record as they occur. At the end of the game, the NATO player's total VP are subtracted from the total Soviet VP to find the total Soviet VP gained. The players consult Levels of Victory (see 28.6) to determine the winner and the level of victory.

28.6 LEVELS OF VICTORY

At the end of the game, both players determine the total number of Soviet VP and consult the victory conditions applying to the *original* (not current) strategy listed below to determine the winner of the game:

Original Strategy: Defensive

SOVIET VP	VICTORY LEVEL
+41 or more	Soviet Decisive Victory
+21 to +40	Soviet Substantive Victory
+1 to +20	Soviet Marginal Victory
-20 to 0	NATO Marginal Victory
-40 to -21	NATO Substantive Victory
-41 or less	NATO Decisive Victory

Original Strategy: Restricted

SOVIET VP	VICTORY LEVEL
+57 or more	Soviet Decisive Victory
+32 to +56	Soviet Substantive Victory
+7 to +31	Soviet Marginal Victory
-18 to +6	NATO Marginal Victory
-43 to -19	NATO Substantive Victory
-44 or less	NATO Decisive Victory

Original Strategy: Unrestricted

SOVIET VP	VICTORY LEVEL
+108 or more	Soviet Decisive Victory
+73 to +107	Soviet Substantive Victory
+38 to +72	Soviet Marginal Victory
+3 to +37	NATO Marginal Victory
-32 to +2	NATO Substantive Victory
-33 or less	NATO Decisive Victory

Original Strategy: World War 3

SOVIET VP	VICTORY LEVEL
+130 or more	Soviet Decisive Victory
+90 to +129	Soviet Substantive Victory
+50 to +89	Soviet Marginal Victory
+10 to +49	NATO Marginal Victory
-30 to +9	NATO Substantive Victory
-31 or less	NATO Decisive Victory

NOTABLE ERRATA

Counters. The Norwegian SS *Ula* should have an ASW value of 1 (not N) on the reverse side of its counter.

Map. In the Combat Summary printed on the North Map, under SSM Combat for the defender, paragraph 5 should read: "5. Add 2 per F14 on CAP mission in target hex; add 1 per other INT air unit on CAP."

2nd Fleet Design Credits:

Game Design and Development: Joseph M. Balkoski
Editorial Development: Michael E. Moore
Graphic Design: Ted Koller
Cover Paintings: James Talbot
Research Assistance: James O'Neill
Editorial Assistance: Elizabeth Mizell
Graphic Production: Rosaria Baldari

Playtesting: Kevin Boylan, Michael Peck, Leonard Quam, Albert Reider, Ed Sullivan
Camera Dept. Supervision: Elaine M. Adkins
Production: Rosaria Baldari, Ted Koller, Michael Moore, James Talbot, Colonial Composition, Monarch Services, Inc.
Project Oversight: W. Bill

Situation Analysis

Joseph M. Balkoski

Of all the inhospitable oceans fought over by the United States and Royal Navies throughout their histories, surely none was more formidable than the freezing Arctic. During the Second World War, the notorious "north Russia run," plowing the Arctic from Iceland to Murmansk, was the most unenviable of convoy assignments for American and British seamen. Transiting submarine-infested waters and fighting off swarms of German bombers based at northern Norwegian airfields, these convoys ran a deadly gauntlet from the moment they left port until they arrived at Murmansk. One convoy that set out in July 1942, the infamous PQ-17, was virtually annihilated.

Despite the unpleasant nature of the Arctic waters, the contemporary United States Navy, along with its western European allies, is placing increasing strategic emphasis on this area. "I cannot conceive of a NATO war in which we would not be putting not one, but several carrier battle groups into the Norwegian Sea at some point. What we must do is seek out and destroy the Soviet capability to interdict our uses of the sea," says Secretary of the Navy John Lehman. At the same time, the resurgent Soviet Navy has underscored the importance of the Arctic and its surrounding waters in its maritime strategy. In the event of conflict, it is apparent that these opposing strategies will meet each other head-on, and the Arctic will probably become the front line of the naval war.

The Region

The Arctic is heavily emphasized in Soviet maritime strategy because the Red Banner Northern Fleet, with headquarters in Murmansk, is the only one of their four regional fleets that has a relatively unobstructed access to the open ocean. Moreover, Murmansk, despite the fact that it is situated at 69° North latitude (170 miles north of the Arctic Circle), is an ice-free port all year-round thanks to the Gulf Stream. This warm water current, which flows northwards through the Atlantic into the Norwegian Sea and finally around the Norwegian North Cape (Nordkapp) into the Barents Sea, prevents the establishment of pack ice in the waters adjacent to Murmansk. However, just a little more than 100 miles north of the North Cape, just beyond the flow of the Gulf Stream, there are heavy ice floes year-round except for the summer. Despite unrestricted access to Murmansk, these desolate waters are no easy assignment for mariners. Even in summer, the life expectancy of a man falling overboard is measured only in minutes; moreover, storms are frequent and the capability of high-technology military equipment under such vigorous conditions will almost certainly be degraded.

Although the Northern Fleet may be able to operate out of Murmansk and enter the Norwegian Sea at will, the fulfillment of such a strategy is another question entirely. If the Soviets intend to mount a sustained operation against NATO shipping lanes from Europe to America, they will perform no useful function in the Norwegian Sea; instead, they will be forced to transit the strait between Scotland and Greenland known in naval parlance as the "Greenland-Iceland-United Kingdom (GIUK) gap." While this strait is not comparable to the Dardenelles or the Strait of Gibraltar (it is over 500 miles from the tip of Scotland to Iceland), the gap is obstructed by NATO-controlled islands, such as the Faeroes and the Shetlands, and is lined with underwater NATO sound surveillance (SOSUS) sites which are deadly accurate in detecting the sound signatures of Soviet warships attempting to transit the gap. Moreover, at any time except the late spring and summer, the Greenland-Iceland portion of the strait would be virtually inaccessible to surface ships because of ice floes.

If the Soviets do not intend to penetrate the GIUK gap and instead strive for a restricted strategy seeking domination of only the Norwegian and Barents Seas, they will be faced with hostile NATO forces safely ensconced in Norway, operating against Soviet naval forces from Norwegian bases. If the Soviets attempt to seize

Norway, especially the remote Finnmark area in the north that contains the most significant Norwegian airfields and ports, they will be faced with a difficult land campaign across an Arctic wasteland with few roads and a mean winter temperature of -14° Fahrenheit. If the Soviets attempt an amphibious end run around Finnmark, they will encounter a hostile Norwegian shore wholly unsuited for amphibious operations. The Norwegian coast is almost as long as the eastern seaboard of the United States. It is marked by a virtually continuous series of deep, irregular glacial fiords; it would be a difficult task at best to gain control of this coast.

The unusual lighting conditions of the Arctic could also affect military operations within the area significantly. In the Arctic winter, the sun does not rise above the horizon; only a weak twilight for two hours or so per day provides any respite from continuous darkness. During the summer, the sun never sets, tracing a low path around the sky, providing perpetual, albeit hardly cheerful sunlight.

NATO Strategies

Until very recently, the GIUK gap was considered the prospective front line for NATO in a future war at sea. The gap was viewed as a potential barrier to Soviet warships, particularly submarines, attempting to penetrate into the north Atlantic shipping lanes to interdict NATO convoys. In a strategic sense, this was a defensive strategy. Recently, however, this strategy has been significantly altered by offensive-minded revisionists with the US Navy. The new doctrine, articulated by Secretary of the Navy John Lehman, emphasizes greater aggressiveness on the part of NATO naval forces. "The qualitative and quantitative transformation of the Soviet fleet required a wholesale revision of American naval strategy," says Lehman. "Such a strategy had to recognize that the United States had no margin of safety in merchant marine or sealift assets. The Soviets have built a submarine force and forward deployed it to take advantage of this US weakness. The answer and the corresponding strategy thus became clear: build-up the fleet to regain the vital supremacy of the seas, develop a forward strategy that would dominate the northern and southern flanks of NATO, and in doing so, throw the Soviets on the defensive."

Lehman's new maritime doctrine implies that NATO naval forces, including precious US Navy carrier battle groups, will conduct sustained operations north of the GIUK gap. These forays appear to have a threefold purpose: first, to provide the north Atlantic shipping lanes with some breathing room; second, to assure the survival of Norway in the event of a Soviet attack; and third, to prevent the Soviet Navy from using the Barents Sea as an unassailable refuge.

Undertaking a naval campaign north of the GIUK gap, particularly north of the Arctic Circle, will be no easy task. Considering the dearth of significant NATO naval bases in the area, logistics will be of paramount importance. Due to the bulk of high-technology naval weaponry, modern warships carry relatively small amounts of ammunition; moreover, they have the potential to expend it at an alarming rate. When a NATO warship runs out of ammunition in the Barents Sea, it will most likely have to be replenished at sea from vulnerable supply ships that carry only limited quantities of provisions. On the other hand, Soviet warships will be able to replenish in the safety of nearby ports.

Lehman's supporters point out that the British task force that set sail for the Falklands in April 1982 was a relatively large fleet that was able to conduct successful operations in Arctic-like waters thousands of miles away from a friendly base. It must be remembered, however, that the Argentine Navy never contested control of the islands and the task force's ammunition expenditure was limited to shore support and air defense — a very different matter than facing the bulk of the Red Banner Northern Fleet and the *Backfires* of Soviet naval aviation. When one considers the British

Falklands experience, one must also note the vulnerability of shipping to land-based air power. Hardly a Royal Navy warship was unscathed by the aggressive Argentine air attacks conducted around the islands. The Argentine Air Force was relatively antiquated when used in this role, relying primarily on gravity bombs delivered by 1950's vintage aircraft. (The vaunted Exocet was used on only a handful of occasions.) The sophisticated Soviet aircraft stationed in the Kola Peninsula that would contest any NATO move into the Norwegian Sea represent infinitely greater power than that faced by the British in *Operation Corporate*. Many NATO naval officers are not enthusiastic about taking their warships so directly into "harm's way" as called for in Lehman's strategy.

The major criticism of a NATO forward strategy, however, is its escalatory effect on the conduct of war. Since the birth of the nuclear age, American military policy has emphasized that in the event of war, its aim must be to limit the scope of the conflict and to prevent the outbreak of a general nuclear exchange. Many defense observers question whether a NATO naval offensive into the Norwegian and Barents Seas will violate this principle. Placing the Soviets on the defensive in an area that was, until very recently, considered a Soviet lake may give the Soviets cause to escalate their conduct of the war to prevent NATO from establishing a military foothold on the Soviet Union's doorstep. The Soviet temptation to escalate in this scenario, perhaps to the nuclear level, will be strong. Contemporary military analysts must wonder about today's military paradox: Can a conventional war between the superpowers possibly be won decisively by one side without significant escalation by the other? Secretary of the Navy Lehman's policy remains an acrimonious issue; it may be the victim of this strategic paradox. Its future as official NATO naval doctrine is still unclear.

Soviet Strategies

Until 1983, the Red Banner Northern Fleet was the largest of the Soviet Union's four regional navies. Although the Pacific Fleet now holds that distinction, the Northern Fleet is a significant force; it has almost three-quarters of the Soviet Navy's nuclear attack submarines and two-thirds of its post-1967 surface combatants and ballistic missile submarines. In addition, it has a major naval aviation detachment of almost 100 long-range aircraft, supported by large numbers of fighters and reconnaissance aircraft.

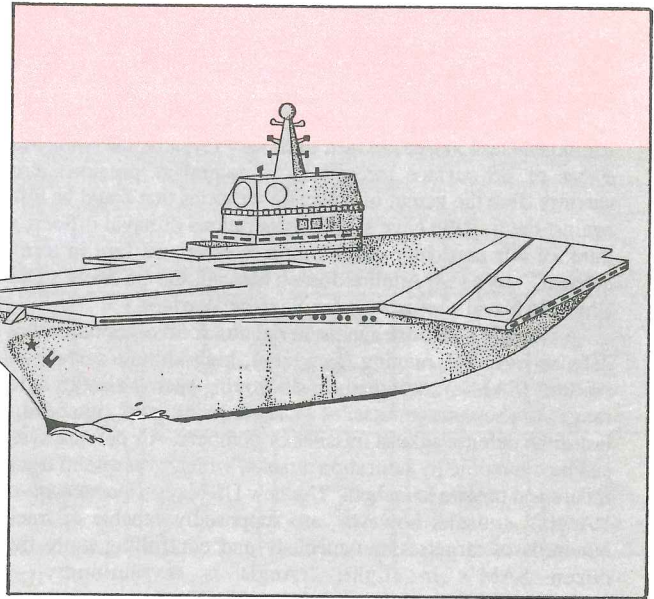
The precise method by which the Northern Fleet's enormous assets will be used in the event of war is a question that is puzzling to NATO observers, especially since 1981 when a two-year debate was initiated within the pages of *Morskoy Sbornik*, the official Soviet Navy periodical, revealing a deep division among high-ranking Soviet maritime strategists. In the 1960's and 1970's, it was fully expected that the Northern Fleet would use its large attack submarine force to interdict the NATO shipping lanes from Europe to America in the same manner as the German U-boat campaign during the Second World War, but with far larger resources and significantly more potent submarines. The increasing sophistication of the Soviet surface fleet also indicates that it may be used as an adjunct to the Northern Fleet's submarines in the execution of this strategy.

The use of the Northern Fleet as a north Atlantic interdiction tool is a daunting prospect for Soviet seamen, for such a campaign would have to be undertaken at enormous distance from friendly bases. Little help could be provided by supply ships, for Soviet underway replenishment techniques are still nascent. Moreover, a major naval foray into the Atlantic would have to be undertaken in the very teeth of NATO's strongest naval forces. For these reasons, many high-ranking Soviet naval officers have begun to question whether or not such a strategy is actually feasible.

Recently it has become apparent that the Soviet Navy is seriously considering a significant change in its maritime strategy, one that would mesh the Navy more closely with national policy and land strategy in the event of war. The foundation of this new theory is the "bastion" doctrine, by which Soviet naval forces would be used in a concentrated fashion in readily defensible waters adjacent to the Soviet Union. Each bastion would have a twofold purpose: first, to protect Soviet ballistic missile submarines from NATO ASW forces in order to preserve a viable nuclear strike capability;

and second, to make it impossible for NATO naval forces, particularly American aircraft carriers, to penetrate close enough to the Soviet Union to attack lucrative land targets such as airfields and ports. By using each fleet as a concentrated mass near the Soviet homeland, the Soviets hope to engage NATO navies in a position of strength in waters of their own choosing, well within supporting distance of Soviet land-based air power.

The new Soviet bastion doctrine is not without its critics, one of which may be the "father of the Soviet Navy" himself, Admiral Sergei Gorshkov. The rejection of a "blue water" strategy for the Soviet Navy would clearly yield operational initiative to NATO, although the real issue is whether or not this initiative would be significant if the bastions are truly impregnable. The abandonment of a major campaign against NATO's sea line of communication, one of Admiral Gorshkov's pet theories in the past, would turn the Atlantic into a NATO lake, although this may not be significant if Soviet grand strategic goals are relatively limited. Perhaps the key to Soviet intentions is flexibility: The Northern Fleet is probably strong and proficient enough to execute either strategy, or a combination of the two, should the situation demand it.



Artist rendering of Soviet carrier, *Kremenlin*.

Contemporary Naval Tactics

A major naval war has not been fought for over 40 years. During this period, warships and naval weapons systems have been in a state of constant flux. The method by which these weapons will be used is both a puzzling and disturbing question to naval observers, for high-technology weaponry has never undergone the rigors of intense combat on the level of Leyte Gulf or Okinawa; whether or not these weapons will work as they are supposed to has never been proven. If they function up to their full capabilities, their potential destructiveness will be alarming. A full-fledged air strike launched from a US Navy aircraft carrier, for example, could conceivably carry over 600,000 pounds of bombs and missiles; a single Soviet destroyer of only 7,000 tons displacement could launch a single salvo of eight missiles with a combined warhead weight of 9,000 pounds against enemy warships well beyond the horizon. When one considers that modern weapons are far more accurate than their World War Two counterparts, their deadliness becomes apparent. In the Falklands (Malvinas) War of 1982, the Exocet missile, although fired in very small numbers by the Argentinians, sank two Royal Navy warships and damaged another, but more importantly exerted a significant debilitating psychological effect on the British task force.

One factor in naval tactics is clear: Aircraft still dominate the sea as they did in World War Two. The simple fact is that an aircraft can deliver more ordnance on a target than any missile or gun — and far more accurately. Aircraft are also retrievable whereas missiles and shells are not. Furthermore, modern aircraft are capable

of operating at enormous ranges; the Soviet *Backfire* bomber, for example, can attack a warship at over 3,000 miles from its base. Aircraft are also capable of performing missions across the spectrum of modern war; a US Navy carrier air wing, for example, deploys fighters, attack, electronic warfare, early warning, refueling, and ASW aircraft aboard a single carrier.

Critics of naval aviation point out the vulnerability of aircraft in the face of modern defensive weaponry, including the fact that a highly-skilled pilot may be killed or captured in the execution of his mission. Also, combat aircraft are enormously expensive. In the Falklands War, the Argentine Air Force, although moderately successful in executing its mission against the British task force, was virtually destroyed after a few weeks of combat.

An adjunct (or, in the view of some, a replacement) to naval aircraft is the surface-to-surface missile (SSM), such as the US Navy's *Harpoon* or the Soviet SSN-12. SSM's are flying bombs that possess sophisticated guidance systems, allowing them to home in on a target with no human control at ranges up to 300 miles. SSM's are bulky, so not many can be carried onboard ship, but they give even a small patrol craft the capability to attack an enemy at far greater range than any World War Two battleship. "*Tomahawk* and *Harpoon* simply are changing the whole way we surface officers think, and thus are changing the equation of naval warfare," says one US admiral.

Defending a naval force from high-technology weaponry is a formidable task indeed. In fact, until very recently, the whole *raison d'être* of US surface forces was to defend its precious aircraft carriers from the gamut of powerful weapons that could be thrown against them. "We have several generations of naval officers who think of our particular contribution to naval warfare in terms of defense," says Vice Admiral Joseph Metcalf, the US Navy's Deputy Chief of Naval Operations for Surface Warfare.

A warship's defense against aerial attack involves numerous air defense weapons, ranging from large, high-altitude surface-to-air missiles (SAM's), designed for destroying enemy aircraft at long-range, to short-range missiles or rapid-firing guns, intended as a last-ditch defense against missiles or bombers. Air defense systems can be overcome by saturation attacks, which overwhelm tracking radars and missile launchers. The new US Navy *Ticonderoga*-class "Aegis" cruisers, however, are supposedly capable of tracking hundreds of targets simultaneously and controlling more than a dozen SAM's in flight. "Aegis is revolutionary — not evolutionary," says Admiral Metcalf. Whether even the most sophisticated air defense ships will be able to counter a large, combined aircraft/SSM attack or not is still open to question, but it is clear that the increasing advancement of air defense systems is rapidly making up for ground lost to offensive weapons in the 1960's and 1970's.

Advance of ASW

Anti-submarine warfare (ASW) was once the sole responsibility of destroyers and frigates, but the increasing threat posed by modern submarines has forced almost all contemporary warships to widen their role in order to deal with the underwater menace. Since the end of the Second World War, ASW has been heavily emphasized by both the US and the Royal Navies in response to the Soviet Union's huge complement of submarines — almost 400 at last count, vastly more than the German Navy was able to deploy at the height of the Battle of the Atlantic.

It is not so much weaponry but submarines themselves which have made such a quantum leap in underwater technology. The primary weapon of the submarine is still the torpedo, which is not much different than its World War Two counterpart. The modern submarine itself, however, is a totally different warship than a World War Two U-boat. Virtually the entire US Navy submarine fleet is nuclear-powered, as are a large proportion of the submarines in the Soviet and Royal Navies. A nuclear submarine is able to dive deeper, remain submerged longer, and most importantly, move far faster than any Second World War submarine. A German U-boat, with a submerged speed of only four or five knots, was lucky if it could intercept even a slow-moving (9 or 10-knot) convoy. Fast ships, such as the *Queen Elizabeth* or *Queen Mary* 30-knot ocean

liners used in a troopship role, were almost impossible to attack. The nuclear submarine, however, is generally capable of at least 30 knots submerged, and one class, the Soviet *Alfas*, are reportedly capable of 45 knots. Nuclear submarines have revolutionized naval warfare because they will be able to bring the war to the enemy with impunity rather than hoping to intercept him by sheer luck.

Although ASW technology has been significantly refined since the end of the Second World War, it is still a chancy business, especially when conducted from a surface warship. A surface ship's anti-submarine detection capability is extremely limited, not so much because its hull-mounted sonars are ineffective, but because the ship is not mobile and quiet enough to detect a lurking submarine before the surface ship itself is detected. For this reason, contemporary ASW is generally initiated by aircraft and submarines, while surface ships are directed to close in for the kill.

In World War Two, land-based aircraft were responsible for almost 50 percent of U-boat sinkings. Contemporary patrol aircraft, such as the US Navy's P-3C *Orion* or the RAF's *Nimrod*, are oriented almost entirely to the ASW mission. They carry a formidable array of ASW weapons and sensors and can remain airborne for 16 hours — a characteristic that would have made the RAF's Coastal Command in the Second World War green with envy. However, the most revolutionary development in ASW over the past 20 years has been the sophistication of the shipborne ASW helicopter. The helicopter is more responsive to submarine threats than fixed-wing aircraft because it can operate in the general vicinity of enemy submarines rather than from distant bases; as such, it can fly missions in direct response to the needs of its parent ship. It can bring weapons to bear on an enemy submarine before the submarine comes within torpedo range of the helicopter's warship. At the same time, the submarine is impotent against the chopper. Generally, ASW helicopters, such as the US Navy's new *Seahawk* LAMPS-III, are the backbone of local ASW defense.

Interestingly enough, submarines are most effectively hunted down by other submarines, particularly stealthy boats that can go deep and use sophisticated listening devices to pick up the noise signature of an enemy submarine at long-range. US and Royal Navy submarines are now primarily oriented towards ASW, a significant doctrinal change from the Second World War when they were used exclusively for ship attack. A duel between two submarines is a deadly game of cat-and-mouse; it is entirely conceivable that a submarine captain's first sign that he has been detected will be a torpedo exploding against his pressure hull.

Admiral Horatio Nelson once said, "No captain can be very wrong if he places his ship alongside that of the enemy." Now, however, the role of a ship captain or task force commander is not so simple. In the words of Admiral Metcalf: "What must the young surface officer deal with? He's got to cope with the hemisphere up to at least 100,000 feet, or if you include space — and I think you should — you're up to 200 to 300 miles. And you're out to 1,000 miles, where the Soviets are at their outer limits of their ability to attack our forces at sea . . . Then there's the down — the Soviet *Alfa* nuclear-powered attack submarine has a very deep-diving capability. So the surface warfare officer, whatever his ship, has got to have some idea of what it's all about — up, out, and down."

The degree by which maritime strategy will be affected by modern naval weaponry is unclear because most naval weapons have not been tested under actual combat conditions. Most observers, including Admiral Gorshkov, see a future war at sea as intense, bloody, and short because contemporary weaponry, although remarkably accurate, can only be produced and deployed in limited quantities. What naval forces will be able to accomplish under these conditions is open to question. Will fleets be capable of establishing decisive control of the sea as the US Navy accomplished in the Pacific in World War Two? Or will naval forces be restricted to "hit and run" operations with only limited goals due to the potency and range of naval weapons? Secretary of the Navy John Lehman's call for NATO power projection into the Norwegian and Barents Seas is clearly a theory which assumes that the weapons that will be directed NATO's way can be adequately handled. The Soviet Union, which places emphasis on controlling its coastal waters, is capable of putting Lehman's theory to a severe test.

Military Forces UNITED STATES

Navy

There is no question that the United States of America possesses the world's most powerful navy. In 1981, Secretary of the Navy John Lehman vowed that the US Navy will be "strong, flexible, offensive, and global — and it will possess unquestioned superiority over any opponent or combination of opponents which might seek to prevent our free use of the seas." The Reagan Administration's commitment to a military build-up, which began in the early 1980's, has assured that Lehman's promise will hold true for at least the near future.

The major reason for the US Navy's position of dominance in the contemporary world is its vast air power. When combined with Marine Corps aviation, the US Navy has over 5,000 aircraft of all types — larger than any air force in the world except for the Soviet Union's. Most importantly, the Navy's capability to project this power into remote areas of the globe is unparalleled due to the use of aircraft carriers, which can sail virtually anywhere in the world in a matter of days at the whim of the President. Although the survivability of aircraft carriers is still being hotly debated, one must wonder if any airfield on land is as powerfully defended as a US flattop at sea. Also, since aircraft carriers are mobile, they can sail out of harm's way in the event of any emergency; an airfield on land is, of course, immovable.

Tactically, the aircraft carrier and its assigned air wing are still the most powerful force in naval operations. Says Admiral Metcalf: "The carrier has the one advantage over other types of weapons at sea — her air wing can bring enormous ordnance to bear at long range. So when you want to bring a significant weight of ordnance to the enemy from a distance, the carrier is the weapon of choice and will be for years to come."

In addition to offensive aviation, the Navy also possesses over 500 long-range patrol and ASW aircraft, deployed both at sea and on land. In fact, the Navy has more land-based aircraft than a large number of the world's air forces.

At one time, the Navy's surface combatants were simply adjuncts to the carriers, their primary purpose being to protect the flattops from anything that came near. This is still an essential function for US cruisers, destroyers, and frigates. The vaunted *Ticonderoga* class, for example, are basically air defense ships; *Spruance*-class destroyers, the largest post-1945 US destroyer program, are essentially ASW vessels. Recently, however, the development of cruise missile technology, particularly the ship-launched *Harpoon* and *Tomahawk*, have opened new vistas for surface warfare officers. Cruise missiles, which can be carried by warships as small as 200-ton patrol hydrofoils, allow a surface ship to attack targets it cannot even see. Since 1976, virtually all US cruisers, destroyers, and frigates have been armed with *Harpoon*. They are generally not carried in great quantity, however, and usually cannot be replenished at sea.

The US Navy's attack submarine force is outnumbered by the Soviets by about three-to-one (roughly 300 to 100). However, US submarines are generally of significantly higher quality than their Soviet counterparts; only four US Navy submarines are diesel-powered as opposed to about 150 in the Soviet Navy, including about 70 pre-1960 models. US submarines are generally quieter than Soviet designs, making them more difficult to detect; until recently, they were also larger, faster, and more powerfully armed. Over the past five years, however, the Soviets have made a quantum leap in submarine design. Their new classes are reportedly superior to US models in both speed and armament. Nevertheless, US submarines, being tailored specifically for ASW, are without peer in submarine detection.

With Secretary of the Navy John Lehman's increasing emphasis on naval operations north of the GIUK gap, it is surprising that the Navy's peacetime presence in the area is virtually non-existent. A single frigate or destroyer is usually contributed to the multinational Standing Naval Force Atlantic squadron; in addition, a small detachment of P-3C *Orions* generally operates from the Keflavik airfield in Iceland. Otherwise, US Navy warships (with the exception of submarines, which regularly deploy to the area) operate north of the GIUK gap only on infrequent exercises.

Marines

The US Marine Corps is only abstractly represented in the game by US amphibious assault ships and Marine markers. There is no permanent Marine Amphibious Unit (MAU, or reinforced battalion) in the north Atlantic as there usually is in the Mediterranean and the Indian Ocean. However, pre-positioned military equipment is currently being deployed to central Norway for potential use by a Marine Amphibious Brigade (MAB) should the need arise to deploy to this area. Should a significant Marine force deploy to Scandinavia by amphibious shipping directly from the United States, it is expected that it would take more than two weeks before even a small Marine force would be ready to fight.

50 US N F111 60 N INT 6	20 US N F16 40 N INT 9	28 US N F15 40 N INT 12	70 US 16 P3 2 3 RCN 1	24 US N A6 75 N ATK 2
18 US N F14 30 N INT 9	16 US N F18 60 N INT 7	24 US N EA6 N N EW 1	24 US N E2 N N AEW 1	40 US N S3 N 4 RCN 1

Air Force

There are only a handful of US Air Force units represented in the game, the most important of which is an F-15 squadron permanently stationed at the Keflavik airfield in Iceland. In addition, a single squadron of F-111's that could conceivably contribute to a north Atlantic campaign is deployed at the Upper Heyford airfield in England. With a sufficient warning period, additional combat squadrons, some from the Air National Guard, could be deployed to Iceland, Britain, and Norway directly from the United States to support Atlantic maritime operations.

PARA 8 1/504 (US)	PARA 8 2/504 (US)	PARA 8 3/504 (US)	PARA 8 4/325 (US)
----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------

Army

The only US Army units represented in the game are four parachute battalions, three from the ready brigade of the 82nd Airborne Division, stationed at Fort Bragg, North Carolina, and one (4th Battalion, 325th Parachute Infantry) based at Vicenza, Italy, as part of NATO's mobile force.

UNITED KINGDOM

Navy

The Royal Navy was shaken by its 1982 Falklands experience, but ultimately triumphed due to a remarkable logistical achievement, amazing tenacity, and the ability to adapt tactically, even with many poorly armed ships. Nevertheless, some of the Navy's alarming weaknesses were brought to light in this conflict, particularly

the poor close defense capability and endurance of many Royal Navy warships and the lack of an effective early warning system which would have allowed the task force to face air attack more coherently. However, most of these deficiencies are in the process of being rectified.

The whole Falklands campaign could probably not have taken place without the air cover provided by the task force's two aircraft carriers, HMS *Invincible* and HMS *Hermes*. Only a handful of *Sea Harriers* operated onboard these carriers, but the pilots were able to achieve remarkable successes operating under the most stressful of combat conditions, triumphing despite the fact that the *Harriers* were relatively limited in capabilities compared to most conventional fighters. How they would fare against larger numbers of more sophisticated Soviet fighters is a different issue. The recent development of an airborne early warning variant of the Sea King helicopter, however, should increase the *Harriers*' effectiveness significantly.

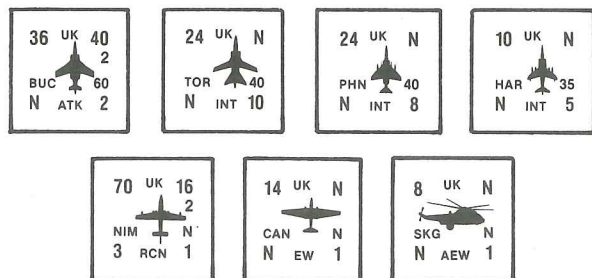
One of the major weaknesses exhibited by British surface combatants in the Falklands War was their lack of endurance. Many US Navy warships can sail up to three times the distance of a Royal Navy vessel of a comparable class on a full load of fuel, although this situation is slowly being rectified by the introduction of larger vessels and a more efficient gas turbine.

British surface combatants are not oriented toward anti-surface warfare; in fact, many Royal Navy classes, including all of its destroyers, are not armed with SSM's. It is interesting to note, however, that the Royal Navy emphasizes attack helicopters, particularly the *Lynx*, which can carry up to four short-range *Sea Skua* anti-ship missiles. US Navy helicopters do not have this capability, although it is planned for the near future, using the Norwegian-built *Penguin* missile. It is also interesting that the British classify their ships by *role* rather than by size, as is the case in the US Navy. Royal Navy destroyers, which in many cases are *smaller* than British frigates, are essentially air defense ships; frigates are basically ASW vessels.

Royal Navy submarines are very similar in design, armament, and role to their American counterparts. As with US Navy submarines, they are primarily oriented to ASW, but are powerful attack platforms as well. It is significant that the Royal Navy has not abandoned diesel submarines. A new conventional submarine class, the *Upholders*, is expected to enter service in 1988. Diesel submarines are able to operate virtually without noise when on battery power. However, they are more vulnerable than their nuclear-powered cousins because they are slower, smaller, and cannot dive as deeply. Also, they must come to the surface to "snorkel" at regular intervals, leaving them vulnerable to detection.

Marines

The Royal Marines are represented in the game by British amphibious assault ships and Marine markers. The Royal Marines 3 Commando Brigade is earmarked for deployment to Norway in the event of war. This brigade consists of 42 and 45 Commandos (battalions). The 45 Commando unit is specially trained in Arctic warfare.



Air Force

Unlike the US Navy, the Royal Navy does not operate land-based reconnaissance and ASW aircraft. Instead, five squadrons of *Nimrod* MR.2 patrol aircraft, operating from coastal airfields, are under RAF control. The *Nimrod* is similar in design to the US P-3C *Orion*. In addition to patrol aircraft, the RAF has three

squadrons of *Buccaneers* specifically trained for ship attack missions, all of which carry the *Sea Eagle* missile, an SSM similar to the US Navy's *Harpoon*. Also, a few squadrons of *Phantoms* and *Tornados* are used in the game, plus a detachment of *Canberra* electronic warfare aircraft.



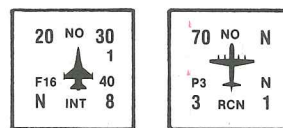
Army

The only British Army units represented in the game are the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd Battalions of the Parachute Regiment. The 1st Battalion is currently part of the Allied Mobile Force, a multinational NATO unit trained for hasty deployment to NATO's northern or southern flanks in an emergency.

NORWAY

Navy

The Norwegian Navy is essentially a coastal defense force. All of its warships are small (none are over 1,800 tons) and of limited endurance. Over 30 small patrol craft are currently in service, all of which are capable of carrying the *Penguin* SSM, a missile with a range of only 14 miles. Norway also has about a dozen tiny diesel submarines that are used for coastal defense.



Air Force

The Royal Norwegian Air Force is small, but is equipped with state-of-the-art aircraft. Three squadrons of F-16 *Falcon* interceptors may be used in a maritime strike role as they are capable of carrying *Penguin* anti-ship missiles. However, the most likely use for the F-16's would be to protect Norwegian air space from Soviet aircraft operating out of the nearby Kola Peninsula. Norwegian maritime patrol aircraft are under the control of the Air Force. A single squadron of P-3B *Orions* is stationed at Andoya, consisting of seven aircraft.

Army

There are no actual units of the Norwegian Army portrayed in the game. However, it is abstractly simulated by the Intrinsic Defense Values of Norwegian bases. The Norwegian Army maintains a brigade-size force of three infantry battalions called the Brigade North in the Finnmark area of northern Norway, deployed to counter a Soviet attack. (Norway is one of only two NATO countries — Turkey is the other — to share a common border with the Soviet Union.) In the event of a Soviet attack, the Norwegian Army, which is overwhelmingly composed of reserves, would be hastily mobilized and deployed northwards, aided by rapid deployment of NATO allies. The Norwegians do not permit the stationing of foreign troops or nuclear weapons on their soil, although they do permit allies to pre-position military equipment at a number of sites.

CANADA

Navy

The Canadian Navy has deteriorated significantly in recent years because no new warship designs have been undertaken for over 15 years — a period which witnessed fundamental changes in naval weapons and tactics. Moreover, for a force that is required to patrol two widely separated coasts and which is earmarked to contribute substantially to north Atlantic defense, the Canadian Navy is woefully weak. Currently, no Canadian warship possesses a long-

range anti-aircraft missile or an anti-ship SSM. Instead, all Canadian warships are ASW oriented. A new class of six frigates is planned, but they are not expected to enter service until the 1990's. To stem the gap in the intervening period, Canada's four most modern destroyers of the *Iroquois* class may be significantly upgraded in the late 1980's by providing an area defense capability, a point defense gun, and — perhaps — *Harpoon* SSM's. Although it is doubtful that any destroyers will complete their upgrade by the time portrayed in the game, the destroyer *Iroquois* has been assigned enhanced combat values. If the players do not wish to consider *Iroquois* upgraded, she would have the identical combat values as *Huron*, which is portrayed in her original configuration.



Army

Four Canadian infantry battalions are represented in the game. The 1st Battalion, Royal Canadian Regiment is currently part of the Allied Mobile Force and is on-call for emergencies anywhere within NATO's realm. The Canadian Air/Sea Transportable Brigade Group (CAST), consisting of three infantry battalions plus supporting artillery and engineers, is earmarked for deployment to north Norway in time of war. This brigade, which is among the elite of the Canadian Army, consists of two French-speaking battalions, the famous 2^{me} and 3^{me} *Bataillons*, *Royal Vingt-deuxieme Regiment*, plus the 2nd Battalion of the Royal Canadian Regiment.

NETHERLANDS

Navy

Although small, the Royal Netherlands Navy is a significant contributor to NATO. Only a few Dutch warships were built before 1975, and almost all are armed with modern high-technology equipment, such as *Harpoon* SSM's and Standard SAM's. Four vessels were designed as task force flagships; one for each of the four escort groups provided by the Dutch Navy to NATO: two for the north Atlantic, one for the English Channel, and one for the North Sea. In addition, the Dutch usually provide a single warship for the Standing Naval Force Atlantic. The Royal Netherlands Navy also controls a small naval aviation force. In peacetime, a single P-3C *Orion* is usually deployed to the Keflavik airfield in Iceland. In the event of an emergency, additional P-3's may be assigned to this location.

Marines

The 1st Amphibious Combat Group, Royal Netherlands Marine Corps is slated for deployment to north Norway as part of the British 3 Royal Marine Commando Brigade.

WEST GERMANY

Navy

The West German Navy is represented in the game by a single destroyer, *Molders*, which is part of the Standing Naval Force Atlantic. The West German Navy is heavily committed to the Baltic and the North Sea and its warships reflect the needs of naval warfare in these shallow and restricted waters. It possesses 45 patrol craft and corvettes, all under 1,000 tons, most of which are armed with Exocet SSM's. The West Germans occasionally deploy heavier warships, such as *Molders*, to the Atlantic, but the game assumes that they are committed to their local waters for the most part.

ITALY

Army

The only Italian unit used in the game is the Susa Alpini Battalion (which includes the Pinerolo Artillery Group). This unit is part of



NATO's Allied Mobile Force and could be transported by air to north Norway in the event of a crisis.

SOVIET UNION

Navy

The Soviet Union possesses the world's second most powerful navy. Its strength is heavily concentrated in submarines and land-based aircraft; Soviet surface forces, although growing steadily in strength and modernity, are not comparable to those of the United States. The Soviet Navy's greatest dilemmas are its inaccessibility to the open ocean and its apparent inability to sustain naval operations on a large scale at great distances from the Soviet Union. Of course, the Soviet Navy's need to deploy far afield is not nearly as great as the US or even the Royal Navy. Nevertheless, if a serious campaign against NATO shipping lanes is contemplated, the strategic problems facing the Soviets are formidable.

Unlike their American counterparts, Soviet submarines are generally specialized for anti-surface warfare, not ASW. With over 300 attack submarines, the majority of them concentrated in the Northern Fleet, this is a potent force indeed. In comparison, at the beginning of the Second World War the German Navy had only 56 U-boats at its disposal, over half of which could not operate beyond coastal waters. Although about 150 of the Soviet submarine force are diesel-powered and not significantly more capable than the best of the German U-boats produced at the end of World War Two, another 150 are nuclear. Soviet nuclear submarines are generally inferior to American and British models, but surprisingly enough, recent Soviet designs demonstrate remarkable ingenuity and skill and are supposedly superior to US and British submarines in some fundamental characteristics. The new *Oscar* class, for example, which entered service in 1982, is reportedly capable of at least 35 knots submerged, an impressive speed for such a large (14,500 tons) submarine; in fact, it is twice as large as the US Navy's *Los Angeles* class. The much smaller *Alfas*, which took the naval world by storm when they entered service in the early 1980's, are capable of 45 knots submerged and can dive deeper (900 meters) than any combat submarine in the world. They can supposedly outrun most of the world's ASW torpedos. However, recent rumors indicate that these submarines are enormously expensive to build and are mechanically unreliable.

Although almost completely land-based, Soviet naval aviation forces are under the direct control of the four fleet commanders. The Soviets emphasize long-range offensive missions with their land-based attack aircraft; the *Backfire* bomber, for example, is capable of attacking NATO shipping in the north Atlantic from its bases in the Kola Peninsula. The Soviet method of attack is to saturate an enemy force with large numbers of stand-off missiles, fired simultaneously by attack aircraft at ranges up to 250 miles from the target. Some of these Soviet air-to-surface missiles are huge; the AS-4 *Kitchen*, for example, weighs 6,500 kilograms (heavier than a small combat aircraft) and has a 1,000 kilogram warhead (four times the size of the *Harpoon*'s warhead). A hit from one of these missiles would surely be devastating to a small warship.

In the mid-1970's, with much ballyhoo from the Western press, the Soviets began to deploy fixed-wing aircraft at sea on their *Kiev*-class carriers, four of which are now in service. These ships, which are capable of deploying only about one dozen VSTOL aircraft and 14 helicopters, are actually heavily armed cruisers that are very powerful in all three areas of naval warfare: ASW, air defense, and ship attack. Their complement of aircraft is not a significant offensive threat due to their limited range; however, they may prove extremely useful supporting long-range aircraft on missions beyond the range of land-based fighters. It is interesting to note that the Soviets are in the process of building a US-style aircraft carrier, the *Kremlin*, which is expected to enter service by 1990. Using catapults and conventional arresting gear, this carrier will be able to deploy aircraft similar to the F-14 or F-18. (The Su-27 *Flanker* is reportedly slated for use on *Kremlin*.) Since even a small force of these carriers would significantly change Soviet tactical cap-

abilities at sea, they could portend a major alteration of Soviet naval strategy in the closing years of the 20th century.

Soviet surface combatants that are on a par with US Navy cruisers and destroyers are concentrated in only a handful of small classes; beyond these, Soviet cruisers, destroyers, and frigates are generally inferior to their American counterparts. *Kiev*-class carriers and the nuclear-powered *Kirov*-class cruisers (of which there are only two) are comparable if not superior to the very best of the US Navy's cruisers. In addition, the new *Sovremennyy* destroyers, which are larger and more powerful than most Soviet cruisers, and *Udaloy* destroyers, which are comparable to the US Navy's *Spruance* class, can be considered the equals of most American surface combatants.

Soviet warships that are armed with SSM's have a fearsome offensive capability. Soviet SSM's are generally far larger than their Western counterparts, some approaching the size of small aircraft. Their warheads are two to four times the size of *Harpoon*. In addition, many have a range on the order of 300 miles, although the accuracy of the missile and ability of the Soviets to guide it to its target at this range are open to question. If the Soviets can use their SSM's effectively at this distance, they will possess a significant tactical advantage over most NATO warships. The new SS-N-22 SSM, used by *Sovremennyy* destroyers, is reportedly capable of flying at Mach 2.5, three times the speed of *Harpoon* (0.85) and *Tomahawk* (0.7). An SSM flying at such a speed would be extremely difficult to shoot down or jam.

Marines

The Northern Fleet does not possess a significant naval infantry force. Its only detachment is the 63rd Naval Infantry Regiment stationed at Pechenga, consisting of four battalions. It is reported that parts of the 45th Motor Rifle Division, also in Pechenga, are trained in amphibious operations. The Northern Fleet only has about one dozen amphibious assault vessels.

150 SO 50 4 T30 N N ATK 1	90 SO 60 3 T26 N N ATK 1	60 SO 50 2 T16G N N ATK 1	18 SO N M23 N N INT 7	26 SO N M25 N N INT 9
16 SO N M29 N N INT 9	32 SO N M31 N N INT 11	38 SO N S24 N N INT 5	24 SO N S27 N N INT 10	12 SO N Y36 N N INT 5
36 SO N B12 N 2 RCN 1	60 SO N 138 N 3 RCN 1	160 SO N T95F N 5 RCN 1	60 SO N T16E N N EW 1	8 SO N HLX N N AEW 1

Air Force

A significant Soviet fighter force is deployed in the Kola Peninsula; although it is under the control of the commander of the Arkhangel'sk air defense district rather than the Northern Fleet. Whether or not these fighters will be used to support offensive missions on the part of Soviet naval aviation is open to question, but it is clear that any use of NATO aircraft in an offensive role in the Barents Sea or against airfields or ports in the Kola Peninsula will be a difficult task in the teeth of the Soviet interceptors. The Arkhangel'sk district supposedly has 120 interceptors at its disposal, the majority of which are MiG-31 *Foxhounds* and MiG-25 *Foxbats*. There are 17 airfields in the Kola Peninsula that can support combat squadrons, leading one military analyst to observe that the Kola is "the most valuable piece of military real estate in the world."



Army

Two Soviet Army airborne divisions are portrayed in the game. The 76th Guards Airborne Division is stationed in the Leningrad Military District and is probably assigned to the Arctic Front. The 103rd Guards Airborne Division is based in central Russia and is the "ready" division within the Soviet Army for emergency use, much in the same manner as the US Army's 82nd Airborne Division.

Summary

With virtually no naval tradition to speak of, the Soviets have built up a first-class navy, comparable in size and scope to their more traditional land and air forces. The exact purpose and role of this navy is still unclear: Is it an aggressive force that will seek out NATO shipping wherever it may be? Or is it essentially defensive, with the objective of preventing hostile nations from establishing a presence in the coastal waters around the Soviet Union? The game allows the players to explore these questions; however, one must fervently hope that the situation simulated in the game will not be duplicated in reality, for the consequences of such a conflict would most likely be tragic not only for the participants but for mankind in general. In the words of Arthur Wellesley, the 1st Duke of Wellington, "Nothing except a battle lost can be half so melancholy as a battle won." In the nuclear age, this observation has added meaning.

United States Forces

4 US N 7 CRSEA N 5 CV 5 0	4 US N 8 INPDN N 5 CV 6 0	4 US N 9 RSVLT N 5 CV 6 0
------------------------------------	------------------------------------	------------------------------------

Aircraft Carriers

NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Coral Sea	Midway	1947
Independence	Forrestal	1959
Theodore Roosevelt	Nimitz	1986

4 US 8 9 5 IOWA 30 N BB 4 0

Battleship

NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Iowa	Iowa	1943

4 US 8 3 2 BELNP 10 5 CG 5 3	4 US 8 4 5 BHILL 16 4 CG 5 10	4 US 8 3 2 LEAHY 8 2 CG 5 6	4 US 8 5 5 SCLNA 12 2 CG 5 5
---------------------------------------	--	--------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

4 US 8 4 2 VNCNS 16 6 CG 5 8	4 US 8 5 5 VRGNA 12 4 CG 5 6
---------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

Cruisers

NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Belknap	Belknap	1964
Bunker Hill	Ticonderoga	1986
Leahy	Leahy	1962
South Carolina	California	1975
Vincennes	Ticonderoga	1985
Virginia	Virginia	1976

4 US 8 4 5 BURKE 16 1 DD 5 7	4 US 8 3 2 GDBOR 12 2 DD 2 3	4 US 8 3 2 LUCE 10 2 DD 2 4	4 US 8 4 2 MSBGR 16 9 DD 6 0	4 US 8 4 2 SCOTT 12 6 DD 5 5
---------------------------------------	---------------------------------------	--------------------------------------	---------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

Destroyers

NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Arleigh Burke	Arleigh Burke	1989
Byrd	Charles F. Adams	1964
Conolly	Spruance	1978
Goldsborough	Charles F. Adams	1963
Luce	Coontz	1961
Moosbrugger	Spruance	1978
Rodgers	Spruance	1979
Scott	Kidd	1981
Spruance	Spruance	1975
Tattnall	Charles F. Adams	1963

4 US 8 2 2 BGLEY 10 4 FF 3 0	4 US 8 3 2 CARR 12 7 FF 4 3	4 US N 2 DAVID 2 2 FF 2 0	4 US N 2 PAGE 12 4 FF 2 2
---------------------------------------	--------------------------------------	------------------------------------	------------------------------------

Frigates

NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Bagley	Knox	1972
Carr	Oliver H. Perry	1985
Clark	Oliver H. Perry	1980
David	Garcia	1968
Davis	Oliver H. Perry	1986

Elrod	Oliver H. Perry	1985
Ford	Oliver H. Perry	1985
Gary	Oliver H. Perry	1984
Hawes	Oliver H. Perry	1985
James	Oliver H. Perry	1986
Knox	Knox	1969
Page	Brooke	1967
Sides	Oliver H. Perry	1981
Stein	Knox	1972
Tripp	Knox	1970

2 US 18 6 2 GATO 18 9 SN N	3 US 18 7 2 LAJLA 22 9 SN N	1 US 18 8 2 LPCMB 18 9 SN N	2 US 18 7 2 POGY 18 9 SN N	2 US N 6 SNOOK 18 6 SN N
-------------------------------------	--------------------------------------	--------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-----------------------------------

Submarines

NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Gato	Permit	1968
Groton	Los Angeles	1978
Jack	Permit	1967
La Jolla	Los Angeles	1981
Lipscomb	Lipscomb	1974
Newport News	Los Angeles	1987
Olympia	Los Angeles	1984
Phoenix	Los Angeles	1981
Pogy	Sturgeon	1971
Snook	Skipjack	1961
Tunny	Sturgeon	1974
Whale	Sturgeon	1968

3 US N 3 BUTTE N N AM 1 0	3 US N 4 CMDEN N N CS 4 0	3 US N 3 CNSTO N N TK 1 0	3 US N 3 DIXON N N ST 1 0
------------------------------------	------------------------------------	------------------------------------	------------------------------------

3 US N 3 KAISR N N TK 4 0	3 US N 3 MLWKE N N CS 4 0	3 US N 3 WLMET N N TK 4 0
------------------------------------	------------------------------------	------------------------------------

Replenishment

NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Butte	Kilauea	1968
Camden	Sacramento	1967
Canisteo	Ashtabula	1945
Dixon	L. Y. Spear	1971
Kaiser	Kaiser	1986
Kiska	Kilauea	1972
Milwaukee	Wichita	1969
Willamette	Cimarron	1982

3 US N 3 ALAMO 2 N AA 2 0	3 US N 4 AUSTN 4 N AA 4 0	3 US N 6 BWOOD 8 N AA 4 0	3 US N 3 FFSHR 2 N AA 4 0
------------------------------------	------------------------------------	------------------------------------	------------------------------------

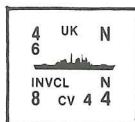
3 US N 3 GNTWN 2 N AA 4 0	3 US N 3 HRCTY 2 N AA 2 0	3 US N 5 IJIMA 8 N AA 4 0
------------------------------------	------------------------------------	------------------------------------

Amphibious Assault

NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Alamo	Thomaston	1956
Austin	Austin	1965
Belleau Wood	Tarawa	1978
Fort Fisher	Anchorage	1972

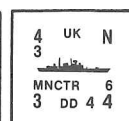
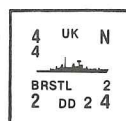
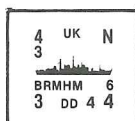
Germantown	Whidbey	1985
Harlan County	Newport	1972
Iwo Jima	Iwo Jima	1961
Newport	Newport	1969
Ogden	Austin	1965
Saginaw	Newport	1971

United Kingdom Forces



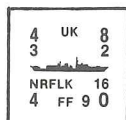
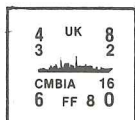
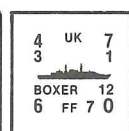
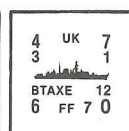
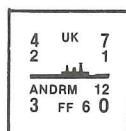
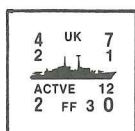
Aircraft Carriers

NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Illustrious	Invincible	1982
Invincible	Invincible	1980



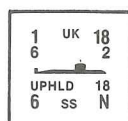
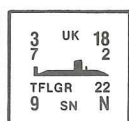
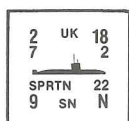
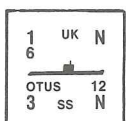
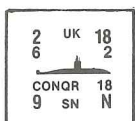
Destroyers

NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Birmingham	Sheffield	1976
Bristol	Bristol	1973
Glasgow	Sheffield	1979
Liverpool	Sheffield	1982
Manchester	Manchester	1982
York	Manchester	1984



Frigates

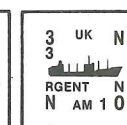
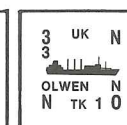
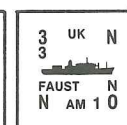
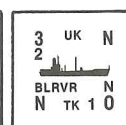
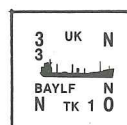
NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Active	Amazon	1977
Andromeda	Leander	1968
Arrow	Amazon	1976
Battleaxe	Broadsword	1980
Boxer	Boxer	1983
Broadsword	Broadsword	1979
Cumbria	Cornwall	1987
London	Boxer	1986
Minerva	Leander	1966
Norfolk	Norfolk	1989
Phoebe	Leander	1966
Scylla	Leander	1970
Sheffield	Boxer	1987



Submarines

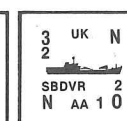
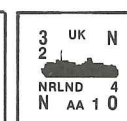
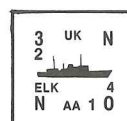
NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Conqueror	Valiant	1971
Otus	Oberon	1963
Spartan	Swiftsure	1979

Superb	Swiftsure	1976
Talent	Trafalgar	1986
Trafalgar	Trafalgar	1983
Upholder	Upholder	1988
Warspite	Valiant	1967



Replenishment

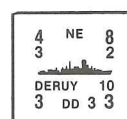
NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Bayleaf	Appleleaf	1982
Blue Rover	Rover	1970
Fort Austin	Fort	1979
Fort Grange	Fort	1978
Olna	Olwen	1966
Olwen	Olwen	1965
Regent	Resource	1967



Amphibious Assault

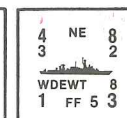
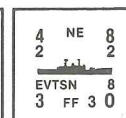
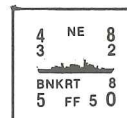
NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Elk	Ferry	-
Intrepid	Fearless	1967
Norland	Ferry	-
Sir Bedivere	Sir Bedivere	1967
Sir Lancelot	Sir Bedivere	1964
Sir Tristram	Sir Bedivere	1967

Netherlands Forces



Destroyer

NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
De Ruyter	Tromp	1976



Frigates

NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Banckert	Kortenaer	1980
Bloys van Treslong	Kortenaer	1982
Evertsen	Van Speijk	1967
Kortenaer	Kortenaer	1978
Piet Hein	Kortenaer	1981
Van Galen	Van Speijk	1967
Witte de With	Van Heemskerck	1986

Canada Forces

4	CA	N
3		
HURON	2	
6	DD	3 0

4	CA	8
3		2
IROQS	10	
4	DD	4 3

Destroyers

NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Huron	Iroquois	1972
Iroquois	Imp. Iroquois	1989 (?)

4	CA	N
2		
NPON	N	
3	FF	2 0

4	CA	N
2		
OTTWA	N	
3	FF	2 0

Frigates

NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Nipigon	Annapolis	1964
Ottawa	St. Laurent	1956
Saguenay	St. Laurent	1956

Norway Forces

3	NO	5
2		1
OSLO	5	
1	FF	2 0

Frigates

NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Bergen	Oslo	1967
Narvik	Oslo	1966
Oslo	Oslo	1966
Stavanger	Oslo	1967

5	NO	25
2		1
PCS1	25	
N	PC	1 0

Patrol Craft

NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
PCS1/2/3	Hauk/Storm	1963-1980

1	NO	N
6		
KAURA	12	
2	SS	N

Submarines

NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Kaura	Type 207	1965
Kunna	Type 207	1964
Kya	Type 207	1964
Sklinna	Type 207	1966
Stadt	Type 207	1966
Stord	Type 207	1967
Ula	Type 207	1965

West German Forces

4	WG	8
3		2
MOLDR	12	
2	DD	2 2

Destroyer

NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Molders	Charles F. Adams	1969

Soviet Union Forces

4	SO	12
6		6
BAKU	14	
8	CV	7 6

4	SO	14
8		6
KRMNL	14	
5	CV	6 4

Aircraft Carriers

NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Baku	Kiev	1985
Kiev	Kiev	1975
Kremlin	Kremlin	1990

4	SO	14
7		6
FRNZE	18	
3	CG	7 8

4	SO	4
4		1
KRSDT	6	
4	CG	5 4

4	SO	12
5		6
KURSK	16	
3	CG	6 4

4	SO	4
4		1
NKLYV	6	
4	CG	6 4

4	SO	N
5		
ORVDT	8	
N	CL	3 0

4	SO	10
4		5
SVTPL	12	
3	CG	2 2

4	SO	10
4		5
VRYAG	12	
1	CG	4 2

Cruisers

NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Frunze	Kirov	1983
Kronshtadt	Kresta II	1970
Kursk	Slava	1984
Nakhimov	Kresta II	1972
Nikolayev	Kara	1973
Oktyabrskaya Revol	Sverdlov	1954
Sevastopol	Kresta I	1967
Tallin	Kara	1980
Timoshenko	Kresta II	1976
Tula	Slava	1985
Varyag	Kynda	1965
Zozulya	Kresta I	1968

4	SO	4
3		1
GNVNY	6	
1	DD	3 1

5	SO	4
3		1
KKRYM	6	
1	DD	2 2

4	SO	14
4		2
OSMTR	18	
3	DD	5 4

5	SO	8
3		1
SDRZY	10	
1	DD	5 2

4	SO	4
4		1
UDLOY	6	
8	DD	6 0

Destroyers

NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Gnevnyy ("Angry")	Kanin	1959
Krasnyy Krym ("Red Crimea")	Kashin	1965
Obraztsovyy ("Exemplary")	Kashin	1965
Osmotritilnyy ("Circumspect")	Sovremenny	1984
Otchayanny ("Merciless")	Sovremenny	1983
Ottuk	Sovremenny	1985
Sderzhanny ("Cautious")	Mod. Kashin	1975
Smetlivyy ("Intelligent")	Kashin	1965
Spiridonov	Udaloy	1984
Stroynny ("Harmonious")	Mod. Kashin	1975
Udaloy ("Daring")	Udaloy	1981
Ukrainyy	Kashin	1965
Vasil'yevskiy	Udaloy	1983
Zhguchiy ("Ardent")	Kanin	1959

4	SO	N
2		
AMTST	2	
1	FF	2 0

4	SO	N
2		
BSHKY	2	
1	FF	4 0

4	SO	4
3		1
BSMNY	6	
2	FF	3 0

4	SO	N
3		
GORI	2	
4	FF	4 0

4	SO	4
3		1
SILNY	6	
2	FF	3 0

Frigates

NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Ametist	Grisha II	1975
Bashkiriy	Grisha III	1978
Bessmennyy ("Irremovable")	Krivak II	1979

Dzerzhinskiy	Krivak III	1985
Gori	Krivak III	1984
Gromkiy ("Thunderous")	Krivak II	1979
Gorval	Krivak III	1985
Gruzin	Grisha III	1978
Menshinsky	Krivak III	1986
Neukrotimyy ("Indomitable")	Krivak II	1979
Orlovskiy	Grisha III	1978
Silnyy ("Powerful")	Krivak I	1974
Svirepyy ("Ferocious")	Krivak I	1974

3 SO N 6 ABLG 22 6 SN N	2 SO 20 6 1 AMUR 12 3 SN N	2 SO 20 5 5 DESNA 6 3 SN N	2 SO 18 6 2 DNEPR 12 3 SN N	3 SO 22 7 6 DON 18 6 SN N
----------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	--------------------------------------	------------------------------------

3 SO N 6 FDZHR 22 6 SN N	3 SO N 6 FKZLV 22 6 SN N	3 SO N 7 LNSKY 22 9 SN N	4 SO N 7 PPSLV 18 6 SN N
-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------

2 SO N 6 DMSKY N 1 SB N	2 SO N 6 KRLSK N 1 SB N	2 SO N 6 KLSKY N 1 SB N	2 SO N 7 KSNGV N 1 SB N	2 SO N 7 UKRNA N 1 SB N
----------------------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------------------

1 SO N 6 CCHER 18 6 SS N	1 SO N 6 CHSKY 12 3 SS N	1 SO N 6 MTSKY 18 3 SS N
-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------

Submarines

NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Anatoly Blagonravov	Victor III	1980
Amur	Charlie I	1970
Constantin Chernenko	Kilo	1983
Chelyabinskiy	Foxtrot	1962
Desna	Echo II	1962
Dnepr	Charlie II	1975
Don	Oscar	1984
Donskaya	Delta III	1982
Feliks Dzerzhinsky	Victor II	1976
Fral Kozlov	Victor I	1970
Ivan Konev	Victor III	1980
Kalmytskaya	Delta III	1982
Karelskaya	Delta I	1973
Kolskiy	Delta II	1975
Krasnogvardets	Delta IV	1986
Kvibishevskiy	Foxtrot	1962
Lena	Charlie I	1970
Leninskiy	Sierra	1985
Magnitogorskiy	Foxtrot	1962

Mikhail Kalinin	Victor I	1970
Mikhail Tukhachevskiy	Tango	1979
Oka	Echo II	1962
Pyotr Pospelov	Alfa	1981
Stepan Georgievich	Tango	1979
Ukraina	Typhoon	1982
Vasily Chuykov	Victor III	1980
Vera Figner	Victor III	1980
Vladmirskiy	Tango	1979
Volga	Oscar	1984
Vologda	Delta II	1975
Yuri Gagarin	Victor III	1980
Yaroslavskiy	Foxtrot	1962

2 SO N 3 CHLKN N N CS 10	2 SO N 2 ILIM N N TK 10	2 SO N 3 IRKUT N N TK 10	2 SO N 3 KLYKN N N ST 30
-----------------------------------	----------------------------------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------

2 SO N 3 KOIDA N N TK 10	2 SO N 2 RYBKV N N AM 30	2 SO N 2 VENTA N N AM 10	2 SO N 3 VDYEV N N ST 20
-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------

Replenishment

NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Chilikin	Chilikin	1977
Gasanov	Chilikin	1977
Ilim	Altay	1971
Irkut	Dubna	1975
Kolyshkin	Ugra	1968
Koida	Uda	1963
Riyabakov	Lama	1966
Venta	Andizhan	1961
Vidyaev	Don	1959
Vilyuy	Andizhan	1961

2 SO N 2 BELOY 2 N AA 30	2 SO N 2 CSHKY 2 N AA 30
-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------

Amphibious Assault

NAME	CLASS	SERVICE
Beloye More	Ropucha	1978
Cheshkaya Guba	Alligator	1972
Karskoye More	Ropucha	1978
Obskaya Guba	Alligator	1972
Pechorskoye More	Ropucha	1978

2nd Fleet

Soviet Player Charts and Tables

©1986, Victory Games, Inc., New York, NY 10001

3001875

ABBREVIATED SEQUENCE OF PLAY

Strategic Cycle (AM Game Turns only)

- A. Political Events Phase
(Advanced Game; not on GT 1)
- B. Weather Phase (Advanced Game)
- C. Reinforcement Phase
(Advanced Game; not on GT 1)
- D. Submarine Mode Phase (Advanced Game)
- E. Strategic Air Phase
 1. Allocation Segment
 2. Interception Segment
 3. Bounce Segment
 4. Mine Segment
 5. Strategic Detection Segment
- F. Invasion Phase (Advanced Game)

Activity Cycle (All Game Turns)

- G. CAP Phase

- H. Minesweeping Phase (Advanced Game)
- I. Replenishment Phase (Advanced Game)
- J. Local Detection Phase
- K. Action Phase
 1. 1st Action Segment
 2. 2nd Action Segment
 3. 3rd Action Segment
- L. Local Detection Removal Phase
- M. CAP Landing Phase

Terminal Cycle (Night Game Turns only)

- N. Fuel Phase (Advanced Game)
- O. Repair Phase (Intermediate and Advanced Games)
- P. Strategic Mission Termination Phase
- Q. Strategic Detection Removal Phase

Game Turn Indication

TERRAIN CHART

Coastal Hex (all kinds):

1. Submarines in Deep mode cannot enter hex, nor can they go into Deep mode in such a hex.
2. Mine markers can be placed in such a hex.

Mainland Norwegian/Great Britain

Coastal Hex:

1. Soviet surface units have a Strategic Detection marker placed on them when they enter this hex.

Base Hex (all kinds):

1. Surface and submarine units in this hex must be detected before they can be attacked. Base hexes do not have to be detected to be attacked.
2. Base hexes cannot be attacked in the Basic Game. In the Intermediate and Advanced Games, airfields can be attacked by Bombing/SSM Combat. In the Advanced Game, ports can be attacked by Bombing/SSM Combat if the logistics option is used.
3. In the Basic Game, surface units in a base hex do not benefit from the base's Close Anti-Air value in SSM/Bombing attacks. In the Intermediate and Advanced Games, a base's Close Anti-Air value is used in defense in Bombing/SSM attacks; surface units in the base do not contribute their Area or Close Anti-Air values in Bombing/SSM attacks on the base.
4. In the Intermediate and Advanced Game, an EW air unit in a stack that attacks a base with Bombing/SSM combat reduces the base's Close Anti-Air value by 1.
5. No Torpedo attacks can be directed against surface units in a base hex or against the base hex.
6. In the Intermediate and Advanced Games, a -4 modifier is applied to SSM attack die rolls against a base (except cruise missiles).
7. In the Advanced Game, CR units are the only Soviet surface units that can end their movement in a port, assuming no NATO surface or submarine units are in the hex.

Norwegian Port Hex:

1. Norwegian units can replenish in-port only in this hex.
2. Other NATO nations can replenish only fuel.

Norwegian Airfield Hex:

1. A maximum of two non-Norwegian NATO ATK/INT air units can initiate Bombing/SSM Combat from such a hex.

Fiord Hex:

1. Carrier-based air units cannot be activated in this

hex, but they can perform CAP and Strategic Air Missions.

2. A surface unit or submarine must stop movement when it enters this hex; if the unit is activated, it has half its Movement Allowance.
3. A submarine in this hex cannot perform Torpedo Combat. A -3 modifier is applied to a Torpedo attack against a target in this hex.
4. Submarine and surface units in this hex cannot perform SSM Combat. A -3 modifier is applied to an SSM attack against a target in this hex.
5. Area Anti-Air values are not taken into account by targets of SSM/Bombing attacks in this hex.
6. A submarine in this hex cannot perform ASW Combat.

Pack Ice Hex:

1. Surface units can never enter this hex.
2. An SN/SB submarine that enters this hex must stop its movement; an SN/SB activated in this hex has a Movement Allowance of 1.
3. A submarine beginning movement in this hex cannot go at full speed.
4. A Strategic Detection marker cannot be placed on a submarine in this hex.
5. Only ASW Combat can be performed in this hex, and the attacker and defender must both be submarines and must occupy pack ice hexes.
6. A submarine cannot enter Deep mode in this hex; a submarine in Deep mode cannot enter.

Drift Ice Hex:

1. A surface unit must spend 2 points of its Movement Allowance to enter this hex; there is no extra cost to exit. A surface unit can always move one hex.
2. A submarine cannot enter this hex at full speed; a submarine cannot be activated at full speed in this hex.

SOSUS Hex:

1. A Soviet submarine must be checked on the Submarine Strategic Detection Table (-2 die roll modifier) when it enters this hex.
2. A Soviet submarine in this hex (or within 3 hexes of it) does not have a Strategic Detection marker removed during the Strategic Detection Removal Phase.

Sub-Oceanic Mountain Hex:

1. A submarine in Deep mode in this hex has a +4 modifier applied to a Submarine Strategic Detection Table die roll.

NATO BASES VICTORY POINT CHART

BASE	HEX	VP VALUE
Akureyri	1928	1
Andoya	3313	3
Angmagssalik	0630	1
Banak	3308	2
Bardufoss	3411	2
Bergen	3926	5
Bodo	3516	3
Hofn	2229	1
Holy Loch/Faslane	3736	6
Jan Mayen	2119	1
Keflavik	1831	5
Kirkwall	3531	3
Leuchars	3833	6
Longyearbyen	2106	2
Lossiemouth	3733	6
Mesters Vig	1420	1
Narssarssuaq	0138	2
Narvik	3412	3
Orland	3720	4
Reykjavik	1830	4
Rosyth	3834	6
Stornoway	3334	5
Sumburgh	3529	3
Tromso	3311	3
Trondheim	3721	4
Upper Heyford	4236	6
Vago	2930	2
Wick	3532	6

Whenever the Armistice marker advances on the Armistice Track, the Soviet player receives Victory Points for each NATO base he controls. The VP value of the base may be enhanced depending on which box the Armistice marker had just advanced into.

ARMISTICE MARKER ADVANCES INTO	VP VALUE MULTIPLE
Negotiations Begin Box	×1
Negotiations Progress Box	×2
Armistice Box	×3

REINFORCEMENT TABLE

DIE	NATO	Soviet
0	0	0
1	1	1
2	2	2
3	3	2
4	4	3
5	5	3
6	6	4
7	7	4
8	8	5
9	9	6
10	10	6
11	11	7
12	12	7

Modifier:

+3: If player has received a Reinforcements Enhanced result on the Special Events Table.

COMBAT SUMMARY

Torpedo Combat

ATTACKER

1. Active submarine may attack 1 or 2 adjacent detected surface units in same target hex with Torpedo value.
2. May not attack base hex.
3. +1 to die roll for each Tactical Coordination (up to 3).
4. -3 if target unit in fiord hex.

DEFENDER

1. Combine ASW values of up to 5 units (including submarines) in target hex.
2. +2 to Defense die roll if at least one target in hex belongs to a Task Force.
3. -1 to Defense die roll if all targets in hex not in Task Force/Group.
4. -3 to Defense die roll if target only surface unit in hex.

SSM Combat

ATTACKER

1. Active submarine, surface units, or air units may attack any and all detected surface units in target hex, or a base hex, with SSM value.
2. Target units must be within SSM range. Except for air units, attacks may not be made across all-land hexside.
3. +1 to die roll for each Tactical Coordination (up to 3).
4. -2 if no friendly surface unit adjacent to target (not against bases).
5. -4 if attack is against base.
6. -3 if target unit in fiord hex.

DEFENDER

1. Combine Area Anti-Air values of all units in target hex.
2. Add Close Anti-Air values of target units.
3. Add Close Anti-Air value of ship under target unit (unless it is target too).
4. Add Area Anti-Air values of surface units that SSM's passed over in attack.
5. Add 2 per F14 on CAP mission in target hex; add 1 per other INT air unit on CAP.
6. +2 to Defense die roll if at least 1 target unit in Task Force.
7. -1 to Defense die roll if all target units in hex not in Task Force/Group.
8. -3 to Defense die roll if target only surface unit in hex.

Bombing Combat

ATTACKER

1. Active air units may attack any and all detected surface units in target hex, or a base hex, with Bombing value.
2. If Defense die roll modifier between 5 and 8, one air unit is damaged.
3. If Defense die roll modifier 9 or more, two air units are damaged.
4. +1 to die roll for each Tactical Coordination (up to 3).

DEFENDER

1. Combine Area Anti-Air values of all units in target hex.
2. Add Close Anti-Air values of target units.
3. Add Close Anti-Air value of ship under target unit (unless it is target too).

4. Add Area Anti-Air values of surface units the attacking air units passed over in attack.
5. +2 to Defense die roll if at least 1 target unit in Task Force.
6. -1 to Defense die roll if all targets in hex not in Task Force/Group.
7. -3 to Defense die roll if target only surface unit in hex.

ASW Combat

ATTACKER

1. Active submarine, surface units, or air units may attack any and all detected submarines, individually, in target hex with ASW value.
2. Attacking submarine or surface units must be adjacent to target. Attack not allowed across all-land hexside. Attacking air units must be in same hex as target.
3. Up to 5 units may attack one target (4 if air units; 1 if submarine).
4. +1 for each Tactical Coordination (up to 3).
5. -1 if submarine in Deep mode.

DEFENDER

1. There is no Defense die roll for ASW combat.

Air-to-Air Combat (except Bounce)

1. Combine Anti-Air values of all attacking air units.
2. Combine Anti-Air values of all defending air units.
3. Compare as ratio (attacker to defender) and round down.
4. Roll die and refer to Air-to-Air Combat Results Table.

ARMISTICE TABLE

DIE	RESULT
0-5	Consult Random Events Table
6-7	No effect
8-11	Advance Armistice marker one box

Modifiers (cumulative):

- +1: Games of Short length
- +1: UN Breakthrough (see 25.2)
- 1: UN Talks Collapse (see 25.2)

RANDOM EVENTS TABLE

DIE	RESULT
0	UN Talks Collapse
1	UN Breakthrough
2-5	Command Failure
6-7	Norwegian Base Falls
8-9	Consult Special Events Table

Note: See 25.2 for an explanation of all Random Events.

SPECIAL EVENTS TABLE

DIE	RESULT
0	NATO Break-up
1	Automatic Escalation
2-4	Accident
5	Submarine Accident
6-7	Reinforcements Enhanced
8-9	Reinforcements Delayed

Note: See 25.3 for an explanation of all Special Events.

WEATHER TABLE

DIE	Period			
	1 JAN-FEB	2 MAR-APR NOV-DEC	3 MAY-JUNE SEPT-OCT	4 JULY-AUG
0-3	Clear	Clear	Clear	Clear
4	Squall	Clear	Clear	Clear
5	Squall	Squall	Clear	Clear
6	Squall	Squall	Squall	Clear
7	Storm	Squall	Squall	Squall
8	Storm	Storm	Storm	Squall
9	Storm	Storm	Storm	Storm

ZONE TABLE

Zones Affected	
DIE	
0	LS/BS
1	BI/SV
2	NS/NA
3	GS/IC
4	LS/NA/BS/SV
5	BI/NS/IC/GS
6	SV/NS
7	BS/GS
8	BS/SV
9	All zones

Key:

- BS: Barents Sea
- BI: British Isles
- GS: Greenland Sea
- IC: Iceland
- LS: Labrador Sea
- NA: North Atlantic
- NS: Norwegian Sea
- SV: Svalbard

STRATEGIC AIR MISSION ELIGIBILITY CHART

AIR UNIT TYPE	TYPE OF STRATEGIC MISSION			
	RECON	TAC COORD	INTER	MINING
INT	Yes ¹	No	Yes	No
ATK	Yes ¹	No	No	No
RCN	Yes ²	Yes	No	Yes
EW	No	No	No	No
AEW	Yes	No	No	No

Yes: Air unit may perform the indicated mission.
No: Air unit may not perform the indicated mission.

Notes:

1: May never place Strategic Detection markers on enemy submarine units. 2: Soviet T16D and T95D air units may not place Strategic Detection markers on NATO submarine units.

RANGES OF AIR UNITS ON STRATEGIC MISSIONS

MOVEMENT ALLOWANCE	MAXIMUM RANGE
71 or more	3 zones
51-70	2 zones
26-50	1 zone
25 or less	Only in zone occupied

How to Use: The air unit's Movement Allowance determines the range (in zones) in which it may perform Strategic Missions. For example, an air unit in the Labrador Sea Zone with a Movement Allowance of 60 could perform a Strategic Mission up to two zones away (in all zones except Svalbard and Barents Sea Zones). During the Allocation Segment of the Strategic Air Phase, place the air unit in one of the mission boxes in the zone in which it will perform its Strategic Mission for the next 3 turns.

COMBAT RESULTS TABLE

Combat Type	DEFENSE	ATTACK	COMBAT VALUE											
			1 to 2	3 to 5	6 to 8	9 to 14	15 to 20	21 to 27	28 to 35	36 to 45	46 to 57	58 to 71	72 to 89	90 or more
-	-7		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
-	-6		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1
-	-5		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	2
-	-4		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	2	2
-	-3		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	2	2	3
-3	-2		0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	2	2	3	3
-2	-1		0	0	0	0	0	1	1	2	2	3	3	4
-1	0		0	0	0	0	1	1	2	2	3	3	4	4
0	1		0	0	0	1	1	2	2	3	3	4	4	5
1	2		0	0	1	1	2	2	3	3	4	4	5	5
2	3		0	1	1	2	2	3	3	4	4	5	5	6
3	4		1	1	2	2	3	3	4	4	5	5	6	6
4	5		1	2	2	3	3	4	4	5	5	6	6	7
5	6		2	2	3	3	4	4	5	5	6	6	7	7
6	7		2	3	3	4	4	5	5	6	6	7	7	8
7	8		3	3	4	4	5	5	6	6	7	7	8	8
8	9		3	4	4	5	5	6	6	7	7	8	8	9
9	10		4	4	5	5	6	6	7	7	8	8	9	9
10	11		4	5	5	6	6	7	7	8	8	9	9	10
11	12		5	5	6	6	7	7	8	8	9	9	10	11

Modifiers to Attacker's Die Roll (cumulative):

- Tactical Coordination:** +1 for each air unit on a Tactical Coordination mission allocated to the attack (maximum 3 air units per combat).
- Defensive Combat:** Subtract Defense combat result obtained by defender in Bombing, SSM, and Torpedo attacks.
- SSM Combat:** -2 if there is no surface unit (owned by the attacking player) in a hex adjacent to the target hex. Do not apply in SSM attacks against bases.
- Bases:** -4 from the attacking player's die rolls in all SSM attacks against bases (except cruise missiles; see 24.1).
- Fiords:** -3 from the attacking player's die rolls in all SSM and Torpedo attacks against enemy surface units occupying fiord hexes.
- Deep Mode:** -1 from the attacking player's die roll in ASW attacks against enemy submarines in Deep mode (see 22.0).

Modifiers to Defense Combat Die Rolls:

- Task Forces:** +2 if at least one target of an SSM, Torpedo, or Bombing attack belongs to a Task Force.
- No Task Group/Force:** -1 if all targets of an SSM, Torpedo, or Bombing attack do not belong to a Task Group or Task Force.
- Solitary Surface Unit:** -3 if target of an SSM, Torpedo, or Bombing attack is the only surface unit in the target hex.

AIR-TO-AIR COMBAT RESULTS TABLE

Combat Type	INTERCEPTION	CAP	COMBAT RATIO									ALL BOUNCE COMBAT
			1-5	1-4	1-3	1-2	1-1	2-1	3-1	4-1		
DIE: 0			3r/0	3r/0	3r/0	2r/0	2r/0	1r/0	0r/0	0r/0r		0/0
1			3r/0	3r/0	2r/0	2r/0	1r/0	0r/0	0r/0r	0/1r		0/1
2			3r/0	3r/0	2r/0	1r/0	1r/0	0r/0r	0/0r	0/1r		0/0r
3			3r/0	2r/0	1r/0	1r/0	0r/0	0/0r	0/1r	0/1r		0/0r
4			2r/0	2r/0	1r/0	0r/0	0r/0r	0/0r	0/1r	0/2r		0/1r
5			2r/0	1r/0	0r/0	0r/0r	0/0r	0/1r	0/1r	0/2r		0/1r
6			1r/0	1r/0	0r/0r	0/0r	0/1r	0/1r	0/2r	0/3r		0/1r
7			1r/0	0r/0	0/0r	0/1r	0/1r	0/1r	0/2r	0/3r		0/2r
8			0r/0	0/0r	0/0r	0/1r	0/1r	0/2r	0/3r	0/4r		0/2r
9			0/0r	0/0r	0/1r	0/2r	0/2r	0/2r	0/3r	0/4r		0/3r

Notes:

- For attacks less or greater than printed ratio columns, use the left-hand (1-5/1-6) or right-hand (4-1/3-1) column, respectively.
- Results to the left of the slash apply to the attacker; those to the right apply to the defender.
- Numbered results indicate the "steps" of damage suffered by the affected player's air units.
- A result of "r" means that the affected player's air units "return to base." Otherwise, the unit continues its mission.
- No combat ratio is determined for Bounce combat. Use the "All Bounce Combat" column for resolving Bounce combat.

AIRCRAFT CARRIER CAP CHART

DISTANCE FROM AIRCRAFT CARRIER	MODIFICATION TO ANTI-AIR VALUES OF UNITS ON CAP	
	AEW UNIT IN CAP MISSION	NO AEW UNIT IN CAP MISSION
1 hex	×1	×1
2 hexes	×1	×½
3 hexes	×½	×¼
4 hexes	×¼*	×⅛

*¼ if AEW air unit is UK SKG or Soviet HLX.

How to Use: Determine how many hexes the air units on the CAP mission are from their carrier when they engage in air-to-air combat. The combined Anti-Air values of all units on CAP are modified (round fractions up; a minimum of 1) as shown on the chart.

SUBMARINE DETECTION TABLE

DIE	DETECTION ATTEMPT AGAINST					
	NATO SS	NATO SN	Soviet SS	Soviet SN	Noisy Soviet SN	Soviet SB
2 or less	D	D	D	D	D	D
3	-	D	D	D	D	D
4	-	D	-	D	D	D
5	-	-	-	D	D	D
6	-	-	-	-	D	D
7	-	-	-	-	D	-
8 or more	-	-	-	-	-	-

-: No effect. D: Detected. Place Strategic Detection marker on submarine.

Modifiers:

- +2: Detection attempt against submarine in Deep mode.
- +4: Detection attempt against submarine in Deep mode in sub-oceanic mountain hex.
- 2: Detection attempt against Soviet submarine in SOSUS hex.

SOVIET PLAYER RECORD

Game Length: _____

Beloy: _____

Pchor: _____

Obsky: _____

Volga (SN): _____

Oka (SN): _____

GAME TURN

ZONES

Squall

.....

9

[illegible]

Stamm

Storm

[illegible]

Abstract

Notes:

TOTAL

- | BASE
CONTROLLED | (VP) | VP AT
NEGOTIATIONS
BEGIN (x 1) | VP AT
NEGOTIATIONS
PROGRESS (x 2) | VP AT
ARMISTICE/
END OF GAME (x 3) |
|--------------------|------|--------------------------------------|---|--|
|--------------------|------|--------------------------------------|---|--|

5. Sea Denial

6. Destroyed NATO Units

Note down the number of NATO units destroyed and multiply the total number of each unit by the indicated multiple.

7. SB Units

8. Unloaded Soviet CR units

Barents Sea Zone: **7 VP**. Any other zone: **10 VP**.

Add up the total number of VP and subtract the NATO VP total from this number. Consult 28.6 to determine the winner and level of victory.

2nd Fleet

Nato Player Charts and Tables

©1986, Victory Games, Inc., New York, NY 10001

3001876

ABBREVIATED SEQUENCE OF PLAY

Strategic Cycle (AM Game Turns only)

- A. Political Events Phase
(Advanced Game; not on GT 1)
- B. Weather Phase (Advanced Game)
- C. Reinforcement Phase
(Advanced Game; not on GT 1)
- D. Submarine Mode Phase (Advanced Game)
- E. Strategic Air Phase
 1. Allocation Segment
 2. Interception Segment
 3. Bounce Segment
 4. Mine Segment
 5. Strategic Detection Segment
- F. Invasion Phase (Advanced Game)

Activity Cycle (All Game Turns)

- G. CAP Phase

- H. Minesweeping Phase (Advanced Game)
- I. Replenishment Phase (Advanced Game)
- J. Local Detection Phase
- K. Action Phase
 1. 1st Action Segment
 2. 2nd Action Segment
 3. 3rd Action Segment
- L. Local Detection Removal Phase
- M. CAP Landing Phase

Terminal Cycle (Night Game Turns only)

- N. Fuel Phase (Advanced Game)
- O. Repair Phase (Intermediate and Advanced Games)
- P. Strategic Mission Termination Phase
- Q. Strategic Detection Removal Phase

Game Turn Indication

TERRAIN CHART

Coastal Hex (all kinds):

1. Submarines in Deep mode cannot enter hex, nor can they go into Deep mode in such a hex.
2. Mine markers can be placed in such a hex.

Mainland Norwegian/Great Britain

Coastal Hex:

1. Soviet surface units have a Strategic Detection marker placed on them when they enter this hex.

Base Hex (all kinds):

1. Surface and submarine units in this hex must be detected before they can be attacked. Base hexes do not have to be detected to be attacked.
2. Base hexes cannot be attacked in the Basic Game. In the Intermediate and Advanced Games, airfields can be attacked by Bombing/SSM Combat. In the Advanced Game, ports can be attacked by Bombing/SSM Combat if the logistics option is used.
3. In the Basic Game, surface units in a base hex do not benefit from the base's Close Anti-Air value in SSM/Bombing attacks. In the Intermediate and Advanced Games, a base's Close Anti-Air value is used in defense in Bombing/SSM attacks; surface units in the base do not contribute their Area or Close Anti-Air values in Bombing/SSM attacks on the base.
4. In the Intermediate and Advanced Game, an EW air unit in a stack that attacks a base with Bombing/SSM combat reduces the base's Close Anti-Air value by 1.
5. No Torpedo attacks can be directed against surface units in a base hex or against the base hex.
6. In the Intermediate and Advanced Games, a -4 modifier is applied to SSM attack die rolls against a base (except cruise missiles).
7. In the Advanced Game, CR units are the only Soviet surface units that can end their movement in a port, assuming no NATO surface or submarine units are in the hex.

Norwegian Port Hex:

1. Norwegian units can replenish in-port only in this hex.
2. Other NATO nations can replenish only fuel.

Norwegian Airfield Hex:

1. A maximum of two non-Norwegian NATO ATK/INT air units can initiate Bombing/SSM Combat from such a hex.

Fiord Hex:

1. Carrier-based air units cannot be activated in this

hex, but they can perform CAP and Strategic Air Missions.

2. A surface unit or submarine must stop movement when it enters this hex; if the unit is activated, it has half its Movement Allowance.
3. A submarine in this hex cannot perform Torpedo Combat. A -3 modifier is applied to a Torpedo attack against a target in this hex.
4. Submarine and surface units in this hex cannot perform SSM Combat. A -3 modifier is applied to an SSM attack against a target in this hex.
5. Area Anti-Air values are not taken into account by targets of SSM/Bombing attacks in this hex.
6. A submarine in this hex cannot perform ASW Combat.

Pack Ice Hex:

1. Surface units can never enter this hex.
2. An SN/SB submarine that enters this hex must stop its movement; an SN/SB activated in this hex has a Movement Allowance of 1.
3. A submarine beginning movement in this hex cannot go at full speed.
4. A Strategic Detection marker cannot be placed on a submarine in this hex.
5. Only ASW Combat can be performed in this hex, and the attacker and defender must both be submarines and must occupy pack ice hexes.
6. A submarine cannot enter Deep mode in this hex; a submarine in Deep mode cannot enter.

Drift Ice Hex:

1. A surface unit must spend 2 points of its Movement Allowance to enter this hex; there is no extra cost to exit. A surface unit can always move one hex.
2. A submarine cannot enter this hex at full speed; a submarine cannot be activated at full speed in this hex.

SOSUS Hex:

1. A Soviet submarine must be checked on the Submarine Strategic Detection Table (-2 die roll modifier) when it enters this hex.
2. A Soviet submarine in this hex (or within 3 hexes of it) does not have a Strategic Detection marker removed during the Strategic Detection Removal Phase.

Sub-Oceanic Mountain Hex:

1. A submarine in Deep mode in this hex has a +4 modifier applied to a Submarine Strategic Detection Table die roll.

NATO BASES VICTORY POINT CHART

BASE	HEX	VP VALUE
Akureyri	1928	1
Andoya	3313	3
Angmagssalik	0630	1
Banak	3308	2
Bardufoss	3411	2
Bergen	3926	5
Bodo	3516	3
Hofn	2229	1
Holy Loch/Faslane	3736	6
Jan Mayen	2119	1
Keflavik	1831	5
Kirkwall	3531	3
Leuchars	3833	6
Longyearbyen	2106	2
Lossiemouth	3733	6
Mesters Vig	1420	1
Narssarssuaq	0138	2
Narvik	3412	3
Orland	3720	4
Reykjavik	1830	4
Rosyth	3834	6
Stornoway	3334	5
Sumburgh	3529	3
Tromso	3311	3
Trondheim	3721	4
Upper Heyford	4236	6
Vago	2930	2
Wick	3532	6

Whenever the Armistice marker advances on the Armistice Track, the Soviet player receives Victory Points for each NATO base he controls. The VP value of the base may be enhanced depending on which box the Armistice marker had just advanced into.

ARMISTICE MARKER ADVANCES INTO	VP VALUE MULTIPLE
Negotiations Begin Box	×1
Negotiations Progress Box	×2
Armistice Box	×3

REINFORCEMENT TABLE

DIE	NATO	Soviet
0	0	0
1	1	1
2	2	2
3	3	2
4	4	3
5	5	3
6	6	4
7	7	4
8	8	5
9	9	6
10	10	6
11	11	7
12	12	7

Modifier:

+3: If player has received a Reinforcements Enhanced result on the Special Events Table.

COMBAT SUMMARY

Torpedo Combat

ATTACKER

1. Active submarine may attack 1 or 2 adjacent detected surface units in same target hex with Torpedo value.
2. May not attack base hex.
3. +1 to die roll for each Tactical Coordination (up to 3).
4. -3 if target unit in fiord hex.

DEFENDER

1. Combine ASW values of up to 5 units (including submarines) in target hex.
2. +2 to Defense die roll if at least one target in hex belongs to a Task Force.
3. -1 to Defense die roll if all targets in hex not in Task Force/Group.
4. -3 to Defense die roll if target only surface unit in hex.

SSM Combat

ATTACKER

1. Active submarine, surface units, or air units may attack any and all detected surface units in target hex, or a base hex, with SSM value.
2. Target units must be within SSM range. Except for air units, attacks may not be made across all-land hexside.
3. +1 to die roll for each Tactical Coordination (up to 3).
4. -2 if no friendly surface unit adjacent to target (not against bases).
5. -4 if attack is against base.
6. -3 if target unit in fiord hex.

DEFENDER

1. Combine Area Anti-Air values of all units in target hex.
2. Add Close Anti-Air values of target units.
3. Add Close Anti-Air value of ship under target unit (unless it is target too).
4. Add Area Anti-Air values of surface units that SSM's passed over in attack.
5. Add 2 per F14 on CAP mission in target hex; add 1 per other INT air unit on CAP.
6. +2 to Defense die roll if at least 1 target unit in Task Force.
7. -1 to Defense die roll if all target units in hex not in Task Force/Group.
8. -3 to Defense die roll if target only surface unit in hex.

Bombing Combat

ATTACKER

1. Active air units may attack any and all detected surface units in target hex, or a base hex, with Bombing value.
2. If Defense die roll modifier between 5 and 8, one air unit is damaged.
3. If Defense die roll modifier 9 or more, two air units are damaged.
4. +1 to die roll for each Tactical Coordination (up to 3).

DEFENDER

1. Combine Area Anti-Air values of all units in target hex.
2. Add Close Anti-Air values of target units.
3. Add Close Anti-Air value of ship under target unit (unless it is target too).

4. Add Area Anti-Air values of surface units the attacking air units passed over in attack.
5. +2 to Defense die roll if at least 1 target unit in Task Force.
6. -1 to Defense die roll if all targets in hex not in Task Force/Group.
7. -3 to Defense die roll if target only surface unit in hex.

ASW Combat

ATTACKER

1. Active submarine, surface units, or air units may attack any and all detected submarines, individually, in target hex with ASW value.
2. Attacking submarine or surface units must be adjacent to target. Attack not allowed across all-land hexside. Attacking air units must be in same hex as target.
3. Up to 5 units may attack one target (4 if air units; 1 if submarine).
4. +1 for each Tactical Coordination (up to 3).
5. -1 if submarine in Deep mode.

DEFENDER

1. There is no Defense die roll for ASW combat.

Air-to-Air Combat (except Bounce)

1. Combine Anti-Air values of all attacking air units.
2. Combine Anti-Air values of all defending air units.
3. Compare as ratio (attacker to defender) and round down.
4. Roll die and refer to Air-to-Air Combat Results Table.

ARMISTICE TABLE

DIE RESULT

- 0-5 Consult Random Events Table
6-7 No effect
8-11 Advance Armistice marker one box

Modifiers (cumulative):

- +1: Games of Short length
+1: UN Breakthrough (see 25.2)
-1: UN Talks Collapse (see 25.2)

WEATHER TABLE

DIE	Period			
	1 JAN-FEB	2 MAR-APR NOV-DEC	3 MAY-JUNE SEPT-OCT	4 JULY-AUG
0-3	Clear	Clear	Clear	Clear
4	Squall	Clear	Clear	Clear
5	Squall	Squall	Clear	Clear
6	Squall	Squall	Squall	Clear
7	Storm	Squall	Squall	Squall
8	Storm	Storm	Storm	Squall
9	Storm	Storm	Storm	Storm

STRATEGIC AIR MISSION ELIGIBILITY CHART

AIR UNIT TYPE	TYPE OF STRATEGIC MISSION			
	RECON	TAC COORD	INTER	MINING
INT	Yes ¹	No	Yes	No
ATK	Yes ¹	No	No	No
RCN	Yes ²	Yes	No	Yes
EW	No	No	No	No
AEW	Yes	No	No	No

Yes: Air unit may perform the indicated mission.
No: Air unit may not perform the indicated mission.

Notes:

1: May never place Strategic Detection markers on enemy submarine units. 2: Soviet T16D and T95D air units may not place Strategic Detection markers on NATO submarine units.

RANDOM EVENTS TABLE

DIE RESULT

- 0 UN Talks Collapse
1 UN Breakthrough
2-5 Command Failure
6-7 Norwegian Base Falls
8-9 Consult Special Events Table

Note: See 25.2 for an explanation of all Random Events.

SPECIAL EVENTS TABLE

DIE RESULT

- 0 NATO Break-up
1 Automatic Escalation
2-4 Accident
5 Submarine Accident
6-7 Reinforcements Enhanced
8-9 Reinforcements Delayed

Note: See 25.3 for an explanation of all Special Events.

ZONE TABLE

DIE	Zones Affected
0	LS/BS
1	BI/SV
2	NS/NA
3	GS/IC
4	LS/NA/BS/SV
5	BI/NS/IC/GS
6	SV/NS
7	BS/GS
8	BS/SV
9	All zones

Key:

BS: Barents Sea
BI: British Isles
GS: Greenland Sea
IC: Iceland
LS: Labrador Sea
NA: North Atlantic
NS: Norwegian Sea
SV: Svalbard

RANGES OF AIR UNITS ON STRATEGIC MISSIONS

MOVEMENT ALLOWANCE	MAXIMUM RANGE
71 or more	3 zones
51-70	2 zones
26-50	1 zone
25 or less	Only in zone occupied

How to Use: The air unit's Movement Allowance determines the range (in zones) in which it may perform Strategic Missions. For example, an air unit in the Labrador Sea Zone with a Movement Allowance of 60 could perform a Strategic Mission up to two zones away (in all zones except Svalbard and Barents Sea Zones). During the Allocation Segment of the Strategic Air Phase, place the air unit in one of the mission boxes in the zone in which it will perform its Strategic Mission for the next 3 turns.

COMBAT RESULTS TABLE

Combat Type		COMBAT VALUE											
		1 to 2	3 to 5	6 to 8	9 to 14	15 to 20	21 to 27	28 to 35	36 to 45	46 to 57	58 to 71	72 to 89	90 or more
DEFENSE	ATTACK												
-	-7	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
-	-6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1
-	-5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	2
-	-4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	2	2
-	-3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	2	2	3
-3	-2	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	2	2	3	3
-2	-1	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	2	2	3	3	4
-1	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	2	2	3	3	4	4
0	1	0	0	0	1	1	2	2	3	3	4	4	5
1	2	0	0	1	1	2	2	3	3	4	4	5	5
2	3	0	1	1	2	2	3	3	4	4	5	5	6
3	4	1	1	2	2	3	3	4	4	5	5	6	6
4	5	1	2	2	3	3	4	4	5	5	6	6	7
5	6	2	2	3	3	4	4	5	5	6	6	7	7
6	7	2	3	3	4	4	5	5	6	6	7	7	8
7	8	3	3	4	4	5	5	6	6	7	7	8	8
8	9	3	4	4	5	5	6	6	7	7	8	8	9
9	10	4	4	5	5	6	6	7	7	8	8	9	9
10	11	4	5	5	6	6	7	7	8	8	9	9	10
11	12	5	5	6	6	7	7	8	8	9	9	10	11

Modifiers to Attacker's Die Roll (cumulative):

- Tactical Coordination:** +1 for each air unit on a Tactical Coordination mission allocated to the attack (maximum 3 air units per combat).
- Defensive Combat:** Subtract Defense combat result obtained by defender in Bombing, SSM, and Torpedo attacks.
- SSM Combat:** -2 if there is no surface unit (owned by the attacking player) in a hex adjacent to the target hex. Do not apply in SSM attacks against bases.
- Bases:** -4 from the attacking player's die rolls in all SSM attacks against bases (except cruise missiles; see 24.1).
- Fiords:** -3 from the attacking player's die rolls in all SSM and Torpedo attacks against enemy surface units occupying fiord hexes.
- Deep Mode:** -1 from the attacking player's die roll in ASW attacks against enemy submarines in Deep mode (see 22.0).

Modifiers to Defense Combat Die Rolls:

- Task Forces:** +2 if at least one target of an SSM, Torpedo, or Bombing attack belongs to a Task Force.
- No Task Group/Force:** -1 if all targets of an SSM, Torpedo, or Bombing attack do not belong to a Task Group or Task Force.
- Solitary Surface Unit:** -3 if target of an SSM, Torpedo, or Bombing attack is the only surface unit in the target hex.

AIR-TO-AIR COMBAT RESULTS TABLE

Combat Type		COMBAT RATIO								
INTERCEPTION	CAP	1-5	1-4	1-3	1-2	1-1	2-1	3-1	4-1	ALL BOUNCE COMBAT
DIE: 0		3r/0	3r/0	3r/0	2r/0	2r/0	1r/0	0r/0	0r/0r	0/0
1		3r/0	3r/0	2r/0	2r/0	1r/0	0r/0	0r/0r	0/1r	0/1
2		3r/0	3r/0	2r/0	1r/0	1r/0	0r/0r	0/0r	0/1r	0/0r
3		3r/0	2r/0	1r/0	1r/0	0r/0	0/0r	0/1r	0/1r	0/0r
4		2r/0	2r/0	1r/0	0r/0	0r/0r	0/0r	0/1r	0/2r	0/1r
5		2r/0	1r/0	0r/0	0r/0r	0/0r	0/1r	0/1r	0/2r	0/1r
6		1r/0	1r/0	0r/0r	0/0r	0/1r	0/1r	0/2r	0/3r	0/1r
7		1r/0	0r/0	0/0r	0/1r	0/1r	0/1r	0/2r	0/3r	0/2r
8		0r/0	0/0r	0/0r	0/1r	0/1r	0/2r	0/3r	0/4r	0/2r
9		0/0r	0/0r	0/1r	0/2r	0/2r	0/2r	0/3r	0/4r	0/3r

Notes:

- For attacks less or greater than printed ratio columns, use the left-hand (1-5/1-6) or right-hand (4-1/3-1) column, respectively.
- Results to the left of the slash apply to the attacker; those to the right apply to the defender.
- Numbered results indicate the "steps" of damage suffered by the affected player's air units.
- A result of "r" means that the affected player's air units "return to base." Otherwise, the unit continues its mission.
- No combat ratio is determined for Bounce combat. Use the "All Bounce Combat" column for resolving Bounce combat.

AIRCRAFT CARRIER CAP CHART

DISTANCE FROM AIRCRAFT CARRIER	MODIFICATION TO ANTI-AIR VALUES OF UNITS ON CAP	
	AEW UNIT IN CAP MISSION	NO AEW UNIT IN CAP MISSION
1 hex	×1	×1
2 hexes	×1	×½
3 hexes	×½	×¼
4 hexes	×¼*	×⅛

*¼ if AEW air unit is UK SKG or Soviet HLX.

How to Use: Determine how many hexes the air units on the CAP mission are from their carrier when they engage in air-to-air combat. The combined Anti-Air values of all units on CAP are modified (round fractions up; a minimum of 1) as shown on the chart.

SUBMARINE DETECTION TABLE

DIE	DETECTION ATTEMPT AGAINST					
	NATO SS	NATO SN	Soviet SS	Soviet SN	Noisy Soviet SN	Soviet SB
2 or less	D	D	D	D	D	D
3	-	D	D	D	D	D
4	-	D	-	D	D	D
5	-	-	-	D	D	D
6	-	-	-	-	D	D
7	-	-	-	-	D	-
8 or more	-	-	-	-	-	-

-: No effect. D: Detected. Place Strategic Detection marker on submarine.

Modifiers:

- +2: Detection attempt against submarine in Deep mode.
- +4: Detection attempt against submarine in Deep mode in sub-oceanic mountain hex.
- 2: Detection attempt against Soviet submarine in SOSUS hex.

NATO PLAYER RECORD

Preparedness Level: _____
 Game Length: _____

Unloaded AA units (NATO Base Hex)

UK UNITS	US UNITS	
Elk: _____	BWood: _____	FFshr: _____
Nrlnd: _____	IJlma: _____	Alamo: _____
Intpd: _____	Austn: _____	Nwprt: _____
SBdvr: _____	Ogden: _____	HrCty: _____
STris: _____	Gntwn: _____	Sgnaw: _____
SLnct: _____		

Cruise Missile Equipped Units

Vrgna (CG): _____	Iowa (BB): _____
SClna (CG): _____	Grotn (SN): _____
BHill (CG): _____	Olypa (SN): _____
Cnoly (DD): _____	NpNws (SN): _____
Rdgrs (DD): _____	Burke (DD): _____
Spnce (DD): _____	

Weather

	GAME TURN	ZONES
Squall	_____	_____
	_____	_____
	_____	_____
	_____	_____
	_____	_____
Storm	_____	_____
	_____	_____
	_____	_____
	_____	_____
	_____	_____

Victory Points

- Soviet first use of nuclear weapons (60 VP) _____
- Unloaded NATO CR units

NATO PORT (HEX)	NUMBER OF CR UNITS	VP MULTIPLE	TOTAL
Tromso (3311)	_____	× 12	_____
Narvik (3412)	_____	× 12	_____
Trondheim (3721)	_____	× 10	_____
Bergen (3926)	_____	× 8	_____
Rosyth (3834)	_____	× 6	_____
Holy Loch/Faslane (3736)	_____	× 6	_____
Reykjavik (1830)	_____	× 3	_____
			TOTAL

3. Destroyed Soviet Units

Note down the number of Soviet units destroyed and multiply the total number of each unit by the indicated multiple.

UNITS	NUMBER OF UNITS	MULTIPLE	TOTAL
CV	_____	× 10	_____
AA before invasion, CG, SN	_____	× 8	_____
DD, CL	_____	× 6	_____
FF, SS, AM, ST, TK, CS	_____	× 4	_____
INT, ATK air units	_____	× 4	_____
AA after invasion	_____	× 2	_____
			TOTAL

Add up the total number of VP and subtract this number from the Soviet VP total. Consult 28.6 to determine the winner and level of victory.

Notes:

SOVIET DEPLOYMENT/REINFORCEMENT CARD

Deployment Chart

PREPAREDNESS LEVEL: Low

1. Rigid Set-up Units

Surface Units

4503: ARKHANGEL'SK

Bshky (FF)
Mnshk (FF)
Irbit (CR)
Yauza (CR)
Ldnev (CR)
Ufa (CR)

3605: PECHENGA

Sdrzy (DD)
Dzhsk (FF)
Venta (AM)
Chlkn (CS)
Koida (TK)
Klykn (ST)

3805: MURMANSK

Baku (CV)
Kursk (CG)
Svtpl (CG)
Otchy (DD)
Strny (DD)
Gori (FF)
Bsmny (FF)
Orlvy (FF)
Pchor (AA)
Obsky (AA)
Cshky (AA)

Air Units

On Baku

Y36 (INT)

3705: POLYARNYY

M25 (INT)
S24 (INT)

3806: KILPYAVR

T16C (ATK)
T16G (ATK)
S27 (INT)
T16E (EW)

4006: MONCHEGORSK

T95D (RCN)
T16D (RCN)
T95F (RCN)
B12 (RCN)
I38 (RCN)

2. Free Set-up Units

Surface Units

Surface Group 1: Any sea or drift ice hex in Barents Sea, Norwegian Sea, or Greenland Sea Zone

Kiev (CV)
Frnze (CG)
Tula (CG)
Tmshk (CG)
Udloy (DD)
Osmtr (DD)

Submarines

Any sea, drift ice, or coastal hexes in Barents Sea Zone

Ukrna (SB)
Vlgda (SB)
Krlsk (SB)
PPslv (SN)
FKzlv (SN)
VFGnr (SN)
VChkv (SN)

Any sea or drift ice hexes in Norwegian Sea, Svalbard, Greenland Sea, and Iceland Zones

CCher (SS)
Volga (SN)
ABlgn (SN)

Any sea hexes in Labrador Sea, North Atlantic, and British Isles Zones

YGagr (SN)
Dnepr (SN)
FDzhr (SN)
Chsky (SS)

Air Units

On Kiev

Y36 (INT)

3. Parachute Units (9): 1/234, 2/234, 3/234, 1/237, 2/237, 3/237, 1/239, 2/239, 3/239 (place aside)

4. Commando Units: Roll the die; the result is the number of available Soviet Commando markers (place aside).

5. Soviet Reinforcements: Place marker in the 0 Box of the Soviet Reinforcement Track.

PREPAREDNESS LEVEL: Moderate

Same as Preparedness Level Low, but also add . . .

1. Rigid Set-up Units

Surface Units

4503: ARKHANGEL'SK

Silny (FF)

3605: PECHENGA

Gnvny (DD)
Gsnov (CS)
Ilim (TK)

3805: MURMANSK

Grval (FF)
Beloy (AA)

Air Units

3705: POLYARNYY

M31 (INT)

3905: KILDENSTROY

T16D (RCN)
B12 (RCN)
I38 (RCN)

3906: OLENOGORSK

T26 (ATK)
T16C (ATK)
M29 (INT)

2. Free Set-up Units

Surface Units

Surface Group 2: Any sea or drift ice hex in Barents Sea, Greenland Sea, Norwegian Sea, British Isles, or Iceland Zone

Nkylv (CG)
Ottuk (DD)
Vslyv (DD)
Sprnv (DD)

Submarines

Any sea, drift ice, or coastal hexes in Barents Sea Zone

Dnsky (SB)
Klsky (SB)
IKnev (SN)
MKaln (SN)

Any sea or drift ice hexes in Norwegian Sea, Greenland Sea, Svalbard, and Iceland Zones

Lnsky (SN)
Kvsky (SS)
SGrch (SS)

Any sea hexes in Labrador Sea, North Atlantic, or British Isles Zones

Oka (SN)
Amur (SN)

3. Parachute Units (3): 1/393, 2/393, 3/393 (place aside)

4. Commando Units: Same as in Preparedness Level Low.

5. Soviet Reinforcements: Place marker in 9 Box on the Soviet Reinforcement Track.

PREPAREDNESS LEVEL: High

Same as Preparedness Level Low and Moderate, but also add . . .

1. Rigid Set-up Units

Surface Units

3805: MURMANSK

Nktmy (FF)
Krsky (AA)

Air Units

3705: POLYARNYY

M25 (INT)

3805: MURMANSK

T26 (ATK)
T16G (ATK)
M23 (INT)
T16E (EW)

3905: KILDENSTROY

T95F (RCN)
T16D (RCN)
B12 (RCN)

2. Free Set-up Units

Surface Units

Surface Group 3: Any sea or drift ice hex in Barents Sea Zone

Zozly (CG)
Vryag (CG)
Krsdt (CG)
Nkhmv (CG)
KKrym (DD)
Ukrny (DD)
Svrpy (FF)
Grzin (FF)
Rybkv (AM)
Vdyev (ST)

Submarines

Any sea, drift ice, or coastal hexes in Barents Sea Zone

Ksngv (SB)
Klmya (SB)
Desna (SN)

Any sea or drift ice hexes in Norwegian Sea, Greenland Sea, Svalbard, and Iceland Zones

Lena (SN)
MTsky (SS)

Any sea hexes in Labrador Sea, North Atlantic, and British Isles Zones

Don (SN)
Mgnit (SS)

3. Parachute Units (3): 1/688, 2/688, 3/688 (place aside)

4. Commando Units: Same as in Preparedness Level Low.

5. Soviet Reinforcements: Place marker in 17 Box on the Soviet Reinforcement Track.

Reinforcement Chart

Box 1

3905: KILDENSTROY

T16D (RCN)

B12 (RCN)

I38 (RCN)

Box 2

3605: PECHENGA

Dnsky (SB)

Klsky (SB)

IKnev (SN)

MKaln (SN)

Box 3

3906: OLENOGORSK

T26 (ATK)

T16C (ATK)

M29 (INT)

Box 4

4503: ARKHANGEL'SK

Gnvny (DD)

Grval (FF)

Silny (FF)

Beloy (AA)

Gsnov (CS)

Ilim (TK)

Box 5

3805: MURMANSK

Nklyv (CG)

Sprnv (DD)

Ottuk (DD)

Vslyv (DD)

Box 6

3605: PECHENGA

Lnsky (SN)

Kvsky (SS)

SGrch (SS)

Box 7

3705: POLYARNYY

M31 (INT)

Box 8

3605: PECHENGA

Oka (SN)

Amur (SN)

Box 9

Parachute Units

(place aside)

1/393

2/393

3/393

Box 10

3905: KILDENSTROY

T95F (RCN)

T16D (RCN)

B12 (RCN)

Box 11

3605: PECHENGA

Ksngv (SB)

Klmnya (SB)

Desna (SN)

Box 12

3805: MURMANSK

T26 (ATK)

T16G (ATK)

M23 (INT)

T16E (EW)

Box 13

4503: ARKHANGEL'SK

Zozly (CG)

Vryag (CG)

Krsdt (CG)

Nkhmv (CG)

KKrym (DD)

Ukrny (DD)

Svrpy (FF)

Grzin (FF)

Nktmy (FF)

Krsky (AA)

Rybkv (AM)

Vdyev (ST)

Box 14

3605: PECHENGA

Don (SN)

Mgnit (SS)

Box 15

3705: POLYARNYY

M25 (INT)

Box 16

Parachute Units

(place aside)

1/688

2/688

3/688

Box 17

3605: PECHENGA

Lena (SN)

MTsky (SS)

Box 18

Any Soviet Airfield

T16C (ATK)

T30 (ATK)

M23 (INT)

M25 (INT)

Box 19

3805: MURMANSK

Talln (CG)

Zgchy (DD)

Smtlv (DD)

Obrsv (DD)

ORvdt (CL)

Box 20

Any Soviet Airfield

T26 (ATK)

B12 (RCN)

Box 21

3605: PECHENGA

Vldmr (SS)

Yrsky (SS)

Box 22

3705: POLYARNYY

Amtst (FF)

Grmkly (FF)

Vlyuy (AM)

Irkut (TK)

Box 23

Parachute Units

(place aside)

1/583

2/583

3/583

Optional: See 24.4

Krmln (CV)

HLX (AEW)

S27 (INT) × 3

NATO DEPLOYMENT/REINFORCEMENT CARD

Deployment Chart

PREPAREDNESS LEVEL: Low

1. Rigid Set-up Units

Surface Units

3311: TROMSO

PCS1 (NO/PC)

3721: TRONDHEIM

Bergn (NO/FF)

Nrvik (NO/FF)

1830: REYKJAVIK

Cnsto (US/TK)

3834: ROSYTH

Scyla (UK/FF)

STris (UK/AA)

SBdvr (UK/AA)

FAust (UK/AM)

Olna (UK/TK)

1342

Knox (US/FF)

James (US/FF)

TCldo (US/CR)

Bay (US/CR)

Submarines

3311: TROMSO

Kya (NO/SS)

Air Units

3313: ANDOYA

P3 (NO/RCN)×2

3516: BODO

F16 (NO/INT)

3720: ORLAND

F16 (NO/INT)

1831: KEFLAVIK

F15 (US/INT)

P3 (US/RCN)×3

3733: LOSSIEMOUTH

BUC (UK/ATK)×2

NIM (UK/RCN)×4

3833: LEUCHARS

PHN (UK/INT)

2. Free Set-up Units

Surface Units

Surface Group 1: Any sea or drift ice hex except in Barents Sea Zone

Iroqs (CA/DD)

Moldr (WG/DD)

Bgley (US/FF)

Acrtv (UK/FF)

Krtnr (NE/FF)

Surface Group 2: Any sea hex within 6 sea hexes of Holy Loch/Faslane (3736)

Iltrs (UK/CV)

York (UK/DD)

Mnctr (UK/DD)

Lndon (UK/FF)

Btaxe (UK/FF)

Arrow (UK/FF)

Submarines

Any sea or drift ice hexes except in Barents Sea Zone

NpNws (US/SN)

Whale (US/SN)

Snook (US/SN)

Tfglr (UK/SN)

Conqr (UK/SN)

Any sea or drift ice hex within 6 hexes of Tromso (3311)

Sklna (NO/SS)

Air Units

On Iltrs

HAR (UK/INT)

SKG (UK/AEW)

3. Parachute Units (3): Susa, 1/PR, 1/RCR (place aside).

4. Commando Units: Roll the die; the result is the number of NATO Commando units available (place aside).

5. NATO Reinforcements: Place marker in 0 Box of the NATO Reinforcement Track.

PREPAREDNESS LEVEL: Moderate
Same as Preparedness Level Low, but also add . . .

1. Rigid Set-up Units

Surface Units

3311: TROMSO

Stvgr (NO/FF)

PCS2 (NO/PC)

1830: REYKJAVIK

Huron (CA/DD)

Elrod (US/FF)

Ford (US/FF)

BWood (US/AA)

Ogden (US/AA)

Austn (US/AA)

Sgnaw (US/AA)

3931

WdeWt (NE/FF)

Bnkrt (NE/FF)

Evtsn (NE/FF)

3834: ROSYTH

Intpd (UK/AA)

Olwen (UK/TK)

Rgent (UK/AM)

0342

Ottwa (CA/FF)

Gary (US/FF)

Hawes (US/FF)

Mteor (US/CR)

Cgnus (US/CR)

Kocak (US/CR)

Kaisr (US/TK)

Butte (US/AM)

1342

Baugh (US/CR)

Lumus (US/CR)

Submarines

3311: TROMSO

Stord (NO/SS)

Air Units

1831: KEFLAVIK

P3 (US/RCN)×2

P3 (NE/RCN)

3532: WICK

TOR (UK/INT)

3733: LOSSIEMOUTH

CAN (UK/EW)

3334: STORNOWAY

NIM (UK/RCN)

4236: UPPER HEYFORD

F111 (US/INT)

2. Free Set-up Units

Surface Units

Surface Group 3: Any sea hex in Labrador Sea Zone

Rsvlt (US/CV)

Vrgna (US/CG)

SClna (US/CG)

Msbgr (US/DD)

Cnoly (US/DD)

Luce (US/DD)

Cmden (US/CS)

Surface Group 4: Any sea hex in British Isles, Norwegian Sea, North Atlantic, or Iceland Zone

Invcl (UK/CV)

Glsgw (UK/DD)

Lvrpl (UK/DD)

Shfld (UK/FF)

Andrm (UK/FF)

Nrflk (UK/FF)

Submarines

Any sea or drift ice hexes except in Barents Sea Zone

Tunny (US/SN)

Sprtn (UK/SN)

Any sea or drift ice hexes except in Barents Sea, Norwegian Sea, Greenland Sea, and Svalbard Zones

Pogy (US/SN)

Talnt (UK/SN)

Any sea or drift ice hex within 6 hexes of Tromso (3311)

Kaura (NO/SS)

Any sea hex in Labrador Sea Zone

Phenx (US/SN)

Air Units

On Rsvlt

F14 (US/INT)×2

F18 (US/INT)×2

A6 (US/ATK)

E2 (US/AEW)

EA6 (US/EW)

S3 (US/RCN)

On Invcl

HAR (UK/INT)

SKG (UK/AEW)

3. Parachute Units (3): 2/RCR, 2/22, 3/22 (place aside)

4. Commando Units: Same as for Preparedness Level Low.

5. NATO Reinforcements: Place marker in 15 Box of the NATO Reinforcement Track.

PREPAREDNESS LEVEL: High

Same as Preparedness Level Low and Moderate, but also add . . .

1. Rigid Set-up Units

Surface Units

3311: TROMSO

Oslo (NO/FF)

PCS3 (NO/PC)

3736: HOLY LOCH/FASLANE

Bdswd (UK/FF)

Boxer (UK/FF)

Cmbia (UK/FF)

Nrlnd (UK/AA)

SLnct (UK/AA)

FGrge (UK/AM)

Baylf (UK/TK)

0741

Tripe (US/FF)

0142

Davis (US/FF)

Sides (US/FF)

Altar (US/CR)

Pllux (US/CR)

1342

Scott (US/DD)

Sgnay (CA/FF)

Npgon (CA/FF)

Eagle (US/CR)

TClba (US/CR)

Hauge (US/CR)

Buyer (US/CR)

Submarines

3311: TROMSO

Stadt (NO/SS)

Air Units

3516: BODO

F16 (NO/INT)

1831: KEFLAVIK

P3 (US/RCN)

3833: LEUCHARS

PHN (UK/INT)

3334: STORNOWAY

NIM (UK/RCN)

4236: UPPER HEYFORD

F15 (US/INT)

2. Free Set-up Units

Surface Units

Surface Group 5: Any sea or drift ice hex within Labrador Sea, North Atlantic, or Iceland Zone

CrSea (US/CV)

BHill (US/CG)

Leahy (US/CG)

Byrd (US/DD)

Gdbor (US/DD)

Rdgrs (US/DD)

Mlwke (US/CS)

Surface Group 6: Any sea hex in British Isles or North Atlantic Zone

DeRuy (NE/DD)

PHein (NE/FF)

VGaln (NE/FF)

BTres (NE/FF)

Surface Group 7: Any sea or drift ice hex in Labrador Sea, North Atlantic, or Iceland Zone

Stein (US/FF)

Clark (US/FF)

Carr (US/FF)

Iljima (US/AA)

Gntwn (US/AA)

Alamo (US/AA)

Nwprt (US/AA)

Surface Group 8: Any sea hex in British Isles or Norwegian Sea Zone

Brmhm (UK/DD)

Brstl (UK/DD)

Submarines

Any sea or drift ice hexes except in Barents Sea Zone

Olypa (US/SN)

Suprb (UK/SN)

Any sea or drift ice hexes in Barents Sea, Greenland Sea, Norwegian Sea, and Iceland Zones

Jack (US/SN)

Wrspt (UK/SN)

Any sea or drift ice hex within 6 hexes of Tromso (3311)

Kunna (NO/SS)

Any sea or drift ice hex within Labrador Sea, North Atlantic, or Iceland Zone

Grotn (US/SN)

Air Units

On CrSea

F18 (US/INT)×4

A6 (US/ATK)

E2 (US/AEW)

3. Parachute Units (3): 4/325, 2/PR, 3/PR (place aside)

4. Commando Units: Same as for Preparedness Level Low.

5. NATO Reinforcements: Place marker in 31 Box of the NATO Reinforcement Track.

Reinforcement Chart

Special: See 24.2

B1 (US/ATK)

Box 1

0142

Baugh (US/CR)

Lumus (US/CR)

Box 2

3733: LOSSIEMOUTH

TOR (UK/INT)

NIM (UK/RCN)

CAN (UK/EW)

Box 3

1831: KEFLAVIK

P3 (US/RCN) ×2

P3 (NE/RCN)

Box 4

0142

Huron (CA/DD)

Elrod (US/FF)

Ford (US/FF)

BWood (US/AA)

Ogden (US/AA)

Austn (US/AA)

Sgnaw (US/AA)

Box 5

3926: BERGEN

Stvgr (NO/FF)

PCS2 (NO/PC)

Stord (NO/SS)

Box 6

3736: HOLY LOCH/FASLANE

Sprtn (UK/SN)

Talnt (UK/SN)

Box 7

4236: UPPER HEYFORD

F111 (US/INT)

Box 8

3834: ROSYTH

Invcl (UK/CV)

Glsgw (UK/DD)

Lvrpl (UK/DD)

Shfld (UK/FF)

Andrm (UK/FF)

Nrflk (UK/FF)

On Invcl

HAR (UK/INT)

SKG (UK/AEW)

Box 9

3926: BERGEN

Kaura (NO/SS)

Box 10

3834: ROSYTH

Intpd (UK/AA)

Olwen (UK/TK)

Rgent (UK/AM)

Box 11

0142

Ottwa (CA/FF)

Gary (US/FF)

Hawes (US/FF)

Mteor (US/CR)

Cgnus (US/CR)

Kocak (US/CR)

Kaisr (US/TK)

Butte (US/AM)

Box 12

1343

Tunny (US/SN)

Pogy (US/SN)

Box 13

3931

WdeWt (NE/FF)

Bnkrt (NE/FF)

Evtsn (NE/FF)

Box 14

0142

Rsvlt (US/CV)

Vrgna (US/CG)

SClna (US/CG)

Cnoly (US/DD)

Msbgr (US/DD)

Luce (US/DD)

Cmden (US/CS)

Phenx (US/SN)

On Rsvlt

F14 (US/INT) ×2

F18 (US/INT) ×2

A6 (US/ATK)

E2 (US/AEW)

EA6 (US/EW)

S3 (US/RCN)

Box 15

Parachute Units

(place aside)

2/RCR

2/22

3/22

Box 16

0142

Scott (US/DD)

Sgnay (CA/FF)

Npgon (CA/FF)

Eagle (US/CR)

TCLba (US/CR)

Hauge (US/CR)

Buyer (US/CR)

Box 17

3833: LEUCHARS

PHN (UK/INT)

NIM (UK/RCN)

Box 18

3516: BODO

F16 (NO/INT)

Box 19

1831: KEFLAVIK

P3 (US/RCN)

Box 20

1343

Olypa (US/SN)

Jack (US/SN)

Box 21

3926: BERGEN

Oslo (NO/FF)

PCS3 (NO/PC)

Stadt (NO/SS)

Box 22

3736: HOLY LOCH/FASLANE

Suprb (UK/SN)

Wrspt (UK/SN)

Box 23

0142

Stein (US/FF)

Clark (US/FF)

Carr (US/FF)

IJima (US/AA)

Gntwn (US/AA)

Alamo (US/AA)

Nwprt (US/AA)

Box 24

3926: BERGEN

Kunna (NO/SS)

Box 25

0143

CrSea (US/CV)

BHill (US/CG)

Leahy (US/CG)

Byrd (US/DD)

Gdbor (US/DD)

Rdgrs (US/DD)

Mlwke (US/CS)

Grotn (US/SN)

On CrSea

F18 (US/INT) ×4

A6 (US/ATK)

E2 (US/AEW)

Box 26

3736: HOLY LOCH/FASLANE

Bdswd (UK/FF)

Boxer (UK/FF)

Cmbia (UK/FF)

Nrlnd (UK/AA)

SLnct (UK/AA)

FGrge (UK/AM)

Baylf (UK/TK)

Box 27

3834: ROSYTH

Brmhm (UK/DD)

Brstl (UK/DD)

Box 28

4236: UPPER HEYFORD

F15 (US/INT)

Box 29

3931

DeRuy (NE/DD)

PHein (NE/FF)

VGaln (NE/FF)

BTres (NE/FF)

Box 30

0142

Tripe (US/FF)

Davis (US/FF)

Sides (US/FF)

Altar (US/CR)

Pllux (US/CR)

Box 31

Parachute Units

(place aside)

4/325

2/PR

3/PR

Box 32

0142

Page (US/FF)

Kiska (US/AM)

Dixon (US/ST)

Box 33

Any NATO-controlled airfield
in British Isles Zone

BUC (UK/ATK)

TOR (UK/INT)

Box 34

3926: BERGEN

Ula (NO/SS)

Box 35

0143 (see 26.2)

Iowa (US/BB)

Inpdn (US/CV)

Vncns (US/CG)

Belnp (US/CG)

Tatnl (US/DD)

Spnce (US/DD)

Wlmet (US/TK)

LaJla (US/SN)

On Inpdn

F14 (US/INT) ×2

F18 (US/INT) ×2

A6 (US/ATK)

E2 (US/AEW)

EA6 (US/EW)

S3 (US/RCN)

Box 36

3834: ROSYTH

Phebe (UK/FF)

Mnrva (UK/FF)

Elk (UK/AA)

BlRvr (UK/TK)

Box 37

1343

Lpcmb (US/SN)

Gato (US/SN)

Box 38

3736: HOLY LOCH/FASLANE

Uphld (UK/SS)

Otus (UK/SS)

Box 39

3938

David (US/FF)

FFshr (US/AA)

HrCty (US/AA)

Box 40

Any NATO-controlled airfield
in British Isles or Norwegian
Sea Zones

PHN (UK/INT)

NIM (UK/RCN)

Box 41

Any NATO-controlled airfield
in Norwegian Sea or Iceland
Zones

F16 (US/INT)

P3 (US/RCN)

Box 42

Parachute Units

(place aside)

1/504

2/504

3/504

Optional: See 24.4

Burke (US/DD)

LOGISTICS ROSTER

UNITED STATES

1. Surface

NAME	FUEL	SSM	ASW	AAA
Belnp (CG)	00000	000*	000000N	00000N
Bgley (FF)	00	00*	000000N	
BHill (CG)	000000	0000	00000N	000000 000000N
Burke (DD)	0000 (2/8) 0000*	000	0000N	00000 00000N
Byrd (DD)	000	00	0000N	000
Carr (FF)	000	00	0000	0000
Clark (FF)	000	0	000	000
Cnoly (DD)	00000 (2/8) 000*	000*	0000 0000N	
David (FF)	00		000000	
Davis (FF)	000	00	000	0000
Elrod (FF)	000	00	0000	000
Ford (FF)	000	0	0000	0000
Gary (FF)	000	00	0000	0000
Gdbor (DD)	000	000	0000N	0000
Hawes (FF)	000	00	0000	0000
Iowa (BB)	UNLIM	00000 (2/8) 0000* 0000*		
James (FF)	000	00	0000	0000
Knox (FF)	00	00*	000000N	
Leahy (CG)	00000	0000*	000N	00000 0000N
Luce (DD)	000	000*	0000N	0000
Msbgr (DD)	00000	00*	0000 0000N	
Page (FF)	00		000000N	00
Rdgrs (DD)	00000 (2/8) 000*	00*	0000 0000N	
SCIna (CG)	UNLIM	00* (2/8) 000*	00000N	00000 0000
Scott (DD)	00000	0000*	00000N	000000
Sides (FF)	000	0	0000	000
Spnce (DD)	00000 (2/8) 000*	000000	0000N	
Stein (FF)	00	00*	000000N	
Tatnl (DD)	000	000	0000N	0000
Tripe (FF)	00	00*	000000N	
Vncns (CG)	000000	0000*	000000N	0000 0000N
Vrgna (CG)	UNLIM	000* (2/8) 000*	00000N	000000

2. Submarines

NAME	SSM	TORP
Gato (SN)	0	0000N
Grotn (SN)	0	000 000N
Jack (SN)	0	0000
LaJla (SN)	00	000 00N
Lbcmb (SN)	0	0000N
NpNws (SN)	000 (2/8) 00	0000N
NAME	SSM	TORP
Olypa (SN)	0 (2/8) 0	0000N
Phenx (SN)	0	000 000N
Pogy (SN)	0	000 00N
Snook (SN)		00000
Tunny (SN)	0	000 00N
Whale (SN)	0	000 00N

3. Carriers

NAME	BOMB	ASW	AIR SSM
CrSea (CV)	00000 00000	0000 000	Hpn (2/40) 00 Mav (1/30) 0000
Inpdn (CV)	000000 000000	0000 0000	Hpn (2/40) 00 Mav (1/30) 0000
Rsvlt (CV)	00000000 00000000	00000 0000	Hpn (2/40) 00 Mav (1/30) 0000

Note: If an air unit using Air SSM's is damaged, the Hpn Attack Value is 20 and the Mav Attack Value is 15.

4. Replenishment

NAME	AP	FP
Butte (AM)	000000000 000000000	
Cmden (CS)	0000000000000 0000000000000	0000000 0000000
Cnsto (TK)		0000000 0000000
Dixon (ST)	000000000	
Kaisr (TK)		0000000 0000000
Kiska (AM)	000000000 000000000	
Mlwke (CS)	00000000	0000000 0000000
Wlmet (TK)		0000000 0000000

UNITED KINGDOM

1. Surface

NAME	FUEL	SSM	ASW	AAA
Active (FF)	00	00*	000000	
Andrm (FF)	00	00*	00000	
Arrow (FF)	00	00*	0000	
Bdswd (FF)	00	00*	00000	
Boxer (FF)	000	00*	00000	
Brmhm (DD)	000		000000	000

NAME	FUEL	SSM	ASW	AAA
Brstl (DD)	000		00000	0000
Btaxe (FF)	00	00*	000000	
Cmbia (FF)	000	0000*	000000	
Glsqw (DD)	000		000000	00
Lndon (FF)	000	00*	000000	
Lvrpl (DD)	000		00000	000
Mnctr (DD)	000		000000	0000
Mnrva (FF)	00	00*	000000	
Nrflk (FF)	0000	0000*	000000	
Phebe (FF)	00	0*	000000	
Scyla (FF)	00	0*	00000	
Shfld (FF)	000	00*	000000	
York (DD)	000		000000	00000

2. Submarines

NAME	SSM	TORP	NAME	SSM	TORP
Conqr (SN)	0	00 00	Talnt (SN)	0	000 00
Otus (SS)		000 000	Tflgr (SN)	0	000 00
Sprtn (SN)	0	000 00	Uphld (SS)	0	000 00
Suprb (SN)	00	00 00	Wrspt (SN)	0	000 00

3. Carriers

NAME	FUEL	BOMB	ASW	AAA	AIR SSM
Iltrs (CV)	0000 0000	000 00	0000 0000	000 00	SEg (2/40) 0
Invcl (CV)	0000 0000	000 00	0000 0000	000 00	SEg (2/40) 0

Note: If an air unit using Air SSM's is damaged, the SEg Attack Value is 20.

4. Replenishment

NAME	AP	FP
Baylf (TK)		0000000 00000000
BIRvr (TK)		000000
FAust (AM)	00000000000 00000000000	
FGrge (AM)	00000000000 00000000000	
Olna (TK)		0000000 00000000
Olwen (TK)		0000000 00000000
Rgent (AM)	00000000000 00000000000	

3001872

CANADA

1. Surface

NAME	FUEL	SSM	ASW	AAA
Huron (DD)	□□□		□□□□□□	
Iroqs (DD)	□□□	□□□□★	□□□□□	□□□□□
Npgon (FF)	□□		□□□□□	
Ottwa (FF)	□□		□□□□□	
Sgnay (FF)	□□		□□□□□	

NETHERLANDS

1. Surface

NAME	FUEL	SSM	ASW	AAA
Bnkrt (FF)	□□	□□□□★	□□□□□	
BTres (FF)	□□	□□□□★	□□□□□	
DeRuy (DD)	□□□	□□□□★	□□□□	□□□□□
Evtsn (FF)	□□	□□□★	□□□□□	
Krtnr (FF)	□□	□□□□★	□□□□□	
PHein (FF)	□□	□□□★	□□□□□□	
VGaln (FF)	□□	□□★	□□□□	
WdeWt (FF)	□□	□□□★	□□□	□□□□□

NORWAY

1. Surface

NAME	FUEL	SSM	ASW
Bergn (FF)	□□	□□□★	□□□□□
Nrvik (FF)	□□	□□★	□□□□□
Oslo (FF)	□□	□□□★	□□□□□
PCS1 (PC)	□	□□★	
PCS2 (PC)	□	□□★	
PCS3 (PC)	□	□□★	
Stvgr (FF)	□□	□□★	□□□□□

2. Submarines

NAME	TORP	NAME	TORP
Kaura (SS)	□□	Stadt (SS)	□□□
Kunna (SS)	□□	Stord (SS)	□□□
Kya (SS)	□□	Ula (SS)	□□□
Sklna (SS)	□□□		

WEST GERMANY

1. Surface

NAME	FUEL	SSM	ASW	AAA
Moldr (DD)	□□□	□□□□★	□□□□	□□□□

NATO

Air Unit Nuclear Attacks

BOMB	ASW
□□□□□□□□	□□□□□□□□□□□□

SOVIET UNION

1. Surface

NAME	FUEL	SSM	ASW	AAA
Amtst (FF)	□□		□□□	
Bshky (FF)	□□		□□□	
Bsmny (FF)	□□□	□□★	□□□□	
Dzhsk (FF)	□□□		□□□□	
Frnze (CG)	UNLIM	□□□□□	□□□□	□□□□□□
		□□□□N		□□□□□□N
Gnvny (FF)	□□□	□	□□□	□□
Gori (FF)	□□□		□□□□□	
Grmkv (FF)	□□□	□□★	□□□□	
Grval (FF)	□□□		□□□□	
Grzin (FF)	□□		□□□	
KKrym (DD)	□□□	□□	□□□	□□□□
Krsdt (CG)	□□□□	□□★	□□□□□N	□□□□□
Kursk (CG)	□□□□□□	□□□□	□□□□□□	□□□□
		□□□□N★		□□□□N
Mnshk (FF)	□□□		□□□□□	
Nkhmv (CG)	□□□□	□□★	□□□□□N	□□□□□
Nklyv (CG)	□□□□□	□□★	□□□□□	□□□□□
Nktmy (FF)	□□□	□★	□□□□	
Obrsv (DD)	□□□	□□	□□□	□□□□
Orlvy (FF)	□□		□□□	
ORvdt (CL)	□□□□			
Osmtr (DD)	□□□□□	□□□□★	□□□□	□□□□□N
Otchy (DD)	□□□□□	□□□□★	□□□□	□□□□□N
Ottuk (DD)	□□□□□	□□□□★	□□□□	□□□□□N
Sdrzy (DD)	□□□	□□★	□□□	□□□□□
Silny (FF)	□□□	□□★	□□□	
Smtlv (DD)	□□□	□	□□□	□□□□
Sprnv (DD)	□□□□□	□□★	□□□□□□N	
Strny (DD)	□□□	□□★	□□□	□□□□□
Svrpy (FF)	□□□	□□★	□□□	
Svtpl (CG)	□□□	□□★	□□□□□	□□□□□
Talln (CG)	□□□□□	□□★	□□□□□	□□□□□
Tmshk (CG)	□□□	□★	□□□□□N	□□□□□
Tula (CG)	□□□□□□	□□□□	□□□□□□	□□□□
		□□□N★		□□□□N
Udloy (DD)	□□□□□	□□★	□□□□□□N	
Ukrny (DD)	□□□	□	□□□	□□□□
Vryag (CG)	□□□	□□□□	□□□□	□□□
		□□□★		
Vslyv (DD)	□□□□□	□□★	□□□□□□N	
Zgchy (DD)	□□□	□□	□□□	□□
Zozly (CG)	□□□	□□★	□□□□□	□□□□□

LOGISTICS ROSTER

2. Submarines

NAME	SSM	TORP	NAME	SSM	TORP
ABIgn (SN)		□□□□ □□N	Mgnit (SS)		□□□ □□
Amur (SN)	□□	□□N	MKaln (SN)		□□□ □□N
CCher (SS)		□□□ □□N	MTsky (SS)		□□□□ □□N
Chsky (SS)		□□□ □□	Oka (SN)	□□N	□□
Desna (SN)	□□	□□	PPslv (SN)		□□□□
Dnepr (SN)	□□N	□□N	SGrch (SS)		□□□ □□N
Don (SN)	□□□□ □□N	□□□□ □□N	VChkv (SN)		□□□□ □□N
FDzhr (SN)		□□□ □□N	VFgnr (SN)		□□□□ □□N
FKzlv (SN)		□□□ □□N	Vldmr (SS)		□□□□ □□N
IKnev (SN)		□□□□ □□N	Volga (SN)	□□□□ □□N	□□□□ □□□□N
Kvsky (SS)		□□□ □□□	YGagr (SN)		□□□□ □□N
Lena (SN)	□□	□□□N	Yrsky (SS)		□□□ □□□
Lnsky (SN)		□□□ □□□			

3. Carriers

NAME	FUEL	BOMB	SSM	ASW	AAA
Baku (CV)	□□□□ □□□□	□□□ □□□	□□□□□□ □□□□□□N	□□□□ □□□□N	□□□□ □□□□N
Kiev (CV)	□□□□ □□□□	□□□ □□□	□□□□□□ □□□□□□N	□□□□ □□□□N	□□□□ □□□□N
Krmln (CV)	UNLIM	□□□□ □□□□ □□□□	□□□□□□	□□□ □□□	□□□□N

4. Replenishment

NAME	AP	FP
Chlkn (CS)	□□□□□□	□□□□□□□□□□
Gsnov (CS)	□□□□□□	□□□□□□□□□□
Ilim (TK)		□□□□□□
Irkut (TK)		□□□□□□
Klykn (ST)	□□□□	
Koida (TK)		□□□□□□
Rybkv (AM)	□□□□□	
Vdyev (ST)	□□□□	
Venta (AM)	□□□□□	
Vlyuy (AM)	□□□□□	

Air Unit Nuclear Attacks

BOMB	ASW	SSM
□□	□□□□□□□□□□	□□□□□ □□□□□□□□□□